

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHING

WO 9603383A1

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : <b>C07D 221/04, C07F 9/30, 9/38, 9/40, 9/48, A61K 31/435, 31/675</b>		(43) International Publication Date: 8 February 1996 (08.02.96)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US95/09381		
(22) International Filing Date: 20 July 1995 (20.07.95)		
(30) Priority Data: 08/278,445 21 July 1994 (21.07.94) US		
(60) Parent Application or Grant (63) Related by Continuation US 08/278,445 (CIP) Filed on 21 July 1994 (21.07.94)		
(71) Applicants (for all designated States except US): ELI LILLY AND COMPANY [US/US]; Lilly Corporate Center, Indianapolis, IN 46285 (US). SHIONOGI & CO., LTD. [JP/JP]; 12-4, Sagisu 5-chome, Fukushima-ku, Osaka 553 (JP).		
(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): DILLARD, Robert, D. [US/US]; 7243 West 92nd Street, Zionsville, IN 46077 (US). HAGISHITA, Sanji [JP/JP]; 502, Kose, Gose-shi, Nara 639-22 (JP). OHTANI, Mitsuaki [JP/JP]; 1342, Takabatake-cho, Nara 630 (JP).		
(54) Title: INDOLIZINE sPLA <sub>2</sub> INHIBITORS		
(57) Abstract		
<p>A class of novel indolizine-1-functional compounds and indolizine-3-functional compounds is disclosed together with the use of such indolizine compounds for inhibiting sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids for treatment of conditions such as septic shock. The compounds are indolizine-1-acetamides, indolizine-1-acetic acid hydrazides, indolizine-1-glyoxylamides, indolizine-3-acetamides, indolizine-3-acetic acid hydrazides, and indolizine-3-glyoxylamides.</p>		

AQ

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

-1-

Title

INDOLIZINE sPLA<sub>2</sub> INHIBITORS

5           Cross Reference to Related Applications

This application is a continuation-in-part of United States Patent Application SN 08/278,445 filed July 21, 1994.

10           Field of the Invention

This invention relates to novel indolizine compounds useful for inhibiting sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids 15 for conditions such as septic shock.

Background of the Invention

The structure and physical properties of human non-pancreatic secretory phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> (hereinafter called, "sPLA<sub>2</sub>") has been thoroughly described in two articles, namely, "Cloning and Recombinant Expression of Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> Present in Rheumatoid Arthritic Synovial Fluid" by Seilhamer, Jeffrey J.; Pruzanski, Waldemar; Vadas Peter; Plant, Shelley; Miller, Judy A.; Kloss, Jean; and Johnson, Lorin K.; The Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 264, No. 10, Issue of April 5, pp. 5335-5338, 1989; and "Structure and Properties of a Human Non-pancreatic Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub>" by Kramer, Ruth M.; Hession, Catherine; Johansen, Berit; Hayes, Gretchen; McGraw, Paula; Chow, E. Pingchang; Tizard, Richard; and Pepinsky, R. Blake; The Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 264, No. 10, Issue of April 5, pp. 5768-5775, 1989; the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference.

35           It is believed that sPLA<sub>2</sub> is a rate limiting enzyme in the arachidonic acid cascade which hydrolyzes membrane

-2-

phospholipids. Thus, it is important to develop compounds which inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids (e.g., arachidonic acid). Such compounds would be of value in general treatment of conditions induced and/or maintained by overproduction of sPLA<sub>2</sub>; such as septic shock, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, rheumatoid arthritis, gout, glomerulonephritis, and etc.

U.S. Patent No. 2,825,734 describes the preparation of 3-(2-amino-1-hydroxyethyl) indoles using 3-indole glyoxylamide intermediates such as 1-phenethyl-2-ethyl-6-carboxy-N-propyl-3-indoleglyoxylamide (see, Example 30).

U.S. Patent No. 2,890,233 describes several amide derivatives of 3-indoleacetic acids.

U.S. Patents No. 3,196,162; 3,242,162; 3,242,163; and 3,242,193 (see, Col. 3, lines 55-60, Example 56) describe indolyl aliphatic acids together with their related esters and amides.

U.S. Patent No. 3,271,416 describes indolyl aliphatic acids as sun screening agents and intermediates. These acids may be -NH<sub>2</sub> substituted.

U.S. Patent No. 3,351,630 describes alpha-substituted 3-indolyl acetic acid compounds and their preparation inclusive of glyoxylamide intermediates.

U.S. Patent No. 3,449,363 describes trifluoromethylindoles having glyoxylamide groups at the 3 position of the indole nucleus. These compounds are stated to be analgesics.

U.S. Patent No. 5,132,319 describes certain 1-(hydroxylaminoalkyl)indoles derivatives as inhibitors of leukotriene biosynthesis.

The article, "Structure-activity relationships leading to WAY-121,520, a tris aryl-type, indomethacin-based, phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> (PLA<sub>2</sub>)/leukotriene biosynthesis inhibitor", by A Kreft, et. al., Agents and Actions, Special Conference Issue Vol. 39 (1993), pp. C33-C35, ISSN 0065-4299, published

-3-

by Birkhauser Verlag, Basel Switzerland; (Proceedings of the Sixth International Conference of the Inflammation Research Association, September 20-24, 1992, at White Haven, PA/USA, Guest Editors, D.W. Morgan and A.K. Welton) describes the  
5 inhibition of phospholipase A2 by indomethacin analogs. Indole compounds having benzyl and acidic substituents are described.

The article, (Short communication) entitled, "Indolizine derivatives with biological activity VI  
10 1-(2-aminoethyl)-3-benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methylindolizine, benanserin structural analogue" by GM Cingolani, F. Claudi, M. Massi, and F. Venturi, Eur. J. Med. Chem. (1990) 25, pp. 709-712 publ. by Elsevier, Paris describes selected indolizines and their activity on smooth muscle.

15 The article, "Indolizine Analogues of Indomethacin" by C. Casagrande, A. Invernizzi, R. Ferrini, and G. Miragoli, Il Farmaco - Ed. Sc. - Vol. 26 - fasc. 12, pp. 1059-1073, describes pharmacological tests with selected indomethacin analogues.

20 European Patent Application No. 0 519 353 (Application No. 92109968.5) describes indolizine derivatives which have pharmacological activities such as inhibitory activity on testosterone reductase.

25 European Patent Application No. 0 620 214 (Application No. 94302646.8) describes hydrazide derivatives of indoles having sPLA<sub>2</sub> inhibitory activity.

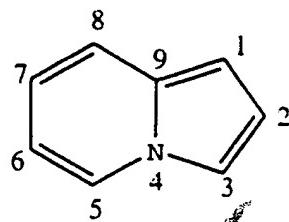
It is desirable to develop new compounds and treatments for sPLA<sub>2</sub> induced diseases.

30

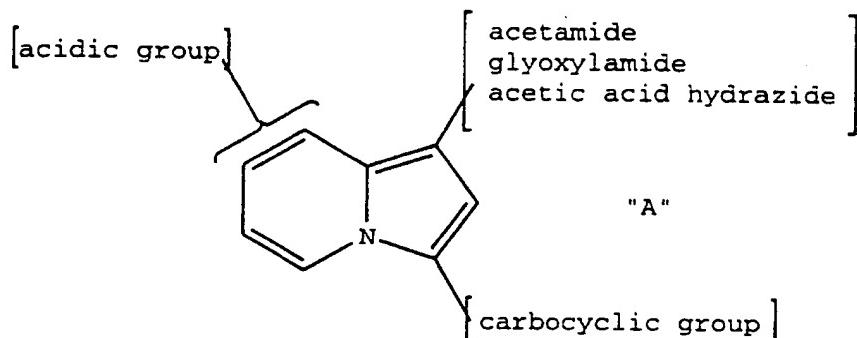
#### Summary of the Invention

This invention is a novel use of indolizine compounds having the nucleus and substituent numbering positions  
35 shown in the following formula:

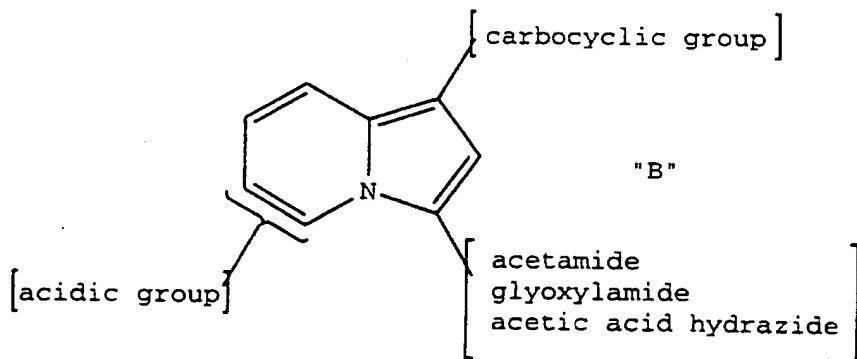
- 4 -



Moreover, this invention is a class of novel indolizine compounds having two general configurations shown in  
5 structural formulae "A" and "B" below:



In configuration "A" an acetamide, acetic acid  
10 hydrazide or glyoxylamide moiety is present at the 1  
position, a large (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>30</sub>) organic (e.g., carbocyclic)  
group is present at the 3 position and an acidic group is  
at the 7 or 8 positions.



-5-

In configuration "B" an acetamide, acetic acid hydrazide or glyoxylamide moiety is present at the 3 position, a large (C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>30</sub>) organic (e.g., carbocyclic) group is present at the 1 position and an acidic group is 5 at the 5 or 6 positions.

These indolizine-1-functional and indolizine-3-functional compounds of the invention are effective in inhibiting human sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids.

This invention is also a pharmaceutical composition 10 containing indolizine-1-functional or indolizine-3-functional compounds selected from the group consisting of the novel indolizine compounds represented by the general formulae "A" and "B" and mixtures thereof.

This invention is also a method of preventing and 15 treating septic shock, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, rheumatoid arthritis, gout, glomerulonephritis, and related diseases by contact with a therapeutically effective amount of indolizine-1-functional and indolizine-3-functional 20 compounds selected from the group consisting of the novel indolizine compounds represented by the general formulae "A" or "B" and mixtures thereof.

#### Detailed Description of the Invention

25

##### Definitions:

The indolizine acetamides, acetic acid hydrazides (hereinafter called, "hydrazides"), and glyoxylamides of the invention employ certain defining terms as follows:

30 The term, "alkyl" by itself or as part of another substituent means, unless otherwise defined, a straight or branched chain monovalent hydrocarbon radical such as methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, isopropyl, n-butyl, tertiary butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, n-pentyl, and n-hexyl.

35 The term, "alkenyl" employed alone or in combination with other terms means a straight chain or branched

-6-

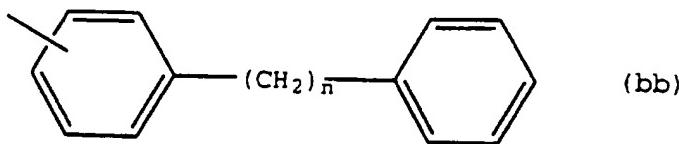
monovalent hydrocarbon group having the stated number range of carbon atoms, and typified by groups such as vinyl, propenyl, crotonyl, isopentenyl, and various butenyl isomers.

- 5       The term, "hydrocarbyl" means an organic group containing only carbon and hydrogen.
- The term, "carbocyclic radical" refers to radicals derived from a saturated or unsaturated, substituted or unsubstituted 5 to 14 membered organic nucleus whose ring forming atoms (other than hydrogen) are solely carbon atoms.

- 10      The term, "halo" means fluoro, chloro, bromo, or iodo.
- The term, "heterocyclic radical", refers to radicals derived from monocyclic or polycyclic, saturated or unsaturated, substituted or unsubstituted heterocyclic nuclei having 5 to 14 ring atoms and containing from 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur. Typical heterocyclic radicals are pyrrolyl, furanyl, thiophenyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, phenylimidazolyl, triazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, 15     indolyl, carbazolyl, norharmanyl, azaindolyl, benzofuranyl, dibenzofuranyl, thianaphtheneyl, dibenzothiophenyl, indazolyl, imidazo(1.2-A)pyridinyl, benzotriazolyl, anthranilyl, 1.2-benzisoxazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzothiazolyl, purinyl, pyridinyl, dipyridinyl, 20     phenylpyridinyl, benzylpyridinyl, pyrimidinyl, phenylpyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, 1,3,5-triazinyl, quinolinyl, phthalazinyl, quinazolinyl, and quinoxalinyl.

- 25      Typical carbocyclic radicals are cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, 30     bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenyl-cyclohexenyl, acenaphthylene, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzyl and related bibenzyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),

- 7 -



where n is a number from 1 to 8.

The term, "non-interfering substituent", refers to

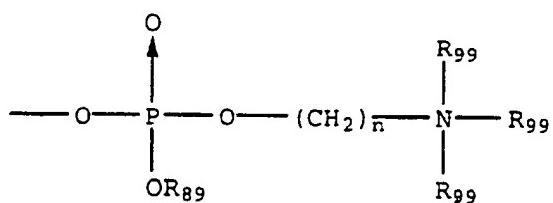
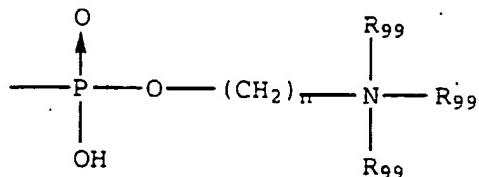
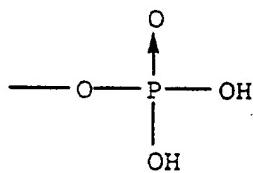
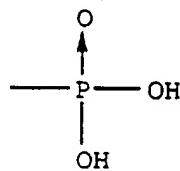
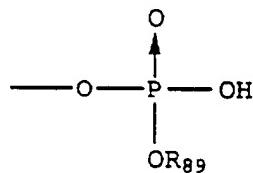
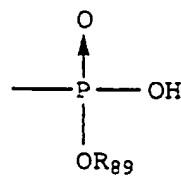
- 5 radicals which do not prevent or significantly reduce the inhibition of SPLA2 mediated release of fatty acids. Non-interfering substituents are suitable for substitution at positions 5, 6, 7 and/or 8 on the indolizine nucleus (as hereinafter depicted in Formula IA) and for radical(s)
- 10 suitable for substitution on the heterocyclic radical and carbocyclic radical as defined above. Illustrative non-interfering radicals are C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyanyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>
- 15 alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyoxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>
- 20 alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio, -(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl,
- 25 fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal, thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

The term, "acidic group" means an organic group which when attached to an indolizine nucleus, through suitable

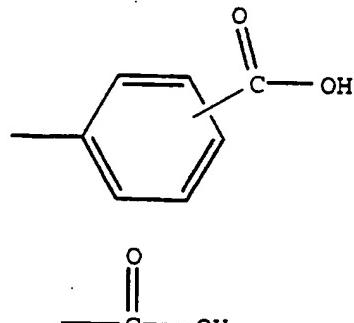
- 30 linking atoms (hereinafter defined as the "acid linker"), acts as a proton donor capable of hydrogen bonding.
- Illustrative of an acidic group are the following:

-8-

-5-tetrazolyl,

-SO<sub>3</sub>H,

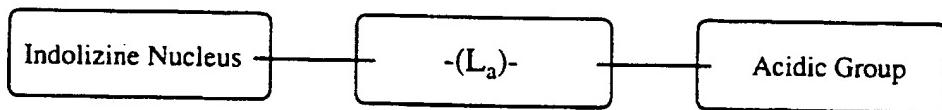
-9-



where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl.

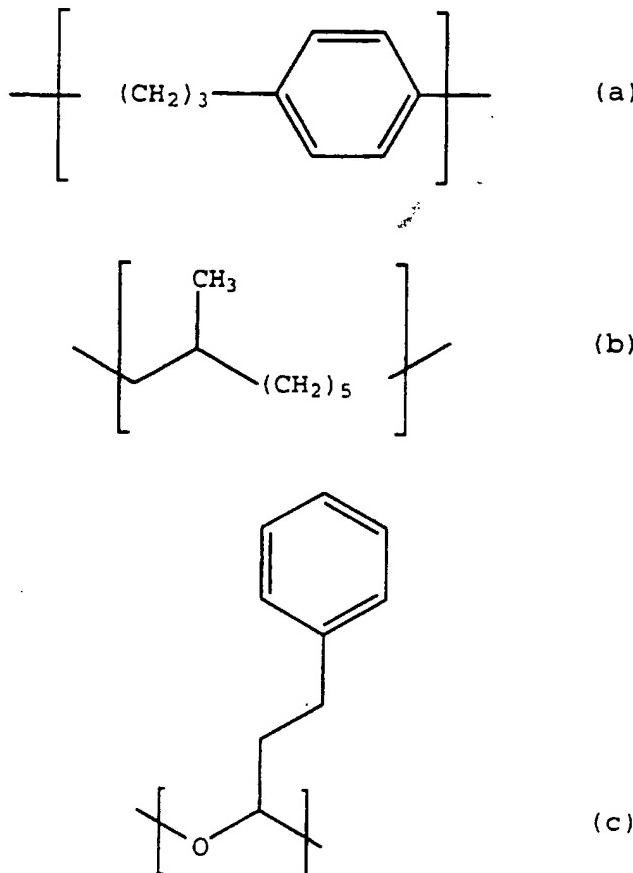
- 5      The words, "acid linker" refer to a divalent linking group symbolized as, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, which has the function of joining the indolizine nucleus to an acidic group in the general relationship:

10



- The words, "acid linker length", refer to the number of atoms (excluding hydrogen) in the shortest chain of the linking group -(L<sub>a</sub>)- that connects the indolizine nucleus  
15 with the acidic group. The presence of a carbocyclic ring in -(L<sub>a</sub>)- counts as the number of atoms approximately equivalent to the calculated diameter of the carbocyclic ring. Thus, a benzene or cyclohexane ring in the acid linker counts as 2 atoms in calculating the length of -(L<sub>a</sub>)-. Illustrative acid  
20 linker groups are;

-10-



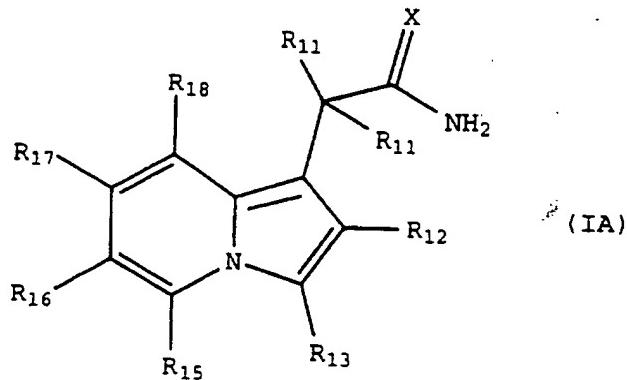
wherein, groups (a), (b), and (c) have acid linker lengths of 5, 7, and 2, respectively.

- 5        The term, "amine", includes primary, secondary and tertiary amines.

Type "A" Configuration Indolizine Compounds of the Invention:

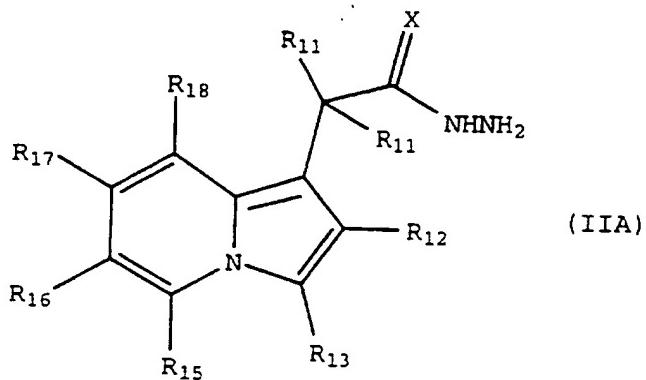
- 10      There are three types of Configuration type "A" Indolizine compounds of the invention as represented by structural formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) below: The indolizine-1-acetamides are represented by the formula (IA), below:

-11-



where X is oxygen or sulfur and each R<sub>11</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo and all other groups are as hereinafter defined.

The indolizine-1-hydrazides are represented by the formula (IIA), as set out below:

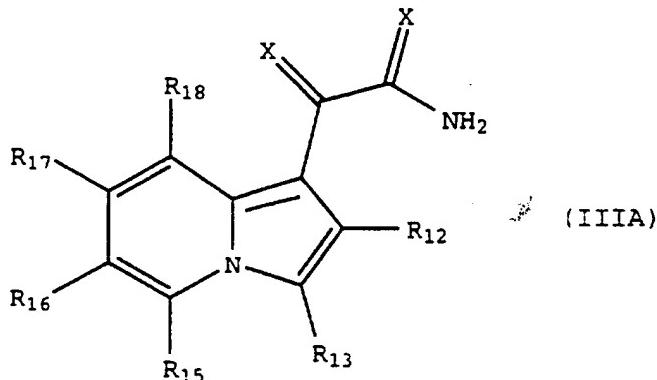


10

where X is oxygen or sulfur and each R<sub>11</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo and all other groups are as hereinafter defined.

15 The indolizine-1-glyoxylamides are represented by the formula (IIIA), as set out below:

-12-



where X is independently oxygen or sulfur and all other groups are as hereinafter defined.

5

For formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) above the remaining groups are defined as follows:

- R<sub>13</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;
  - (a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or
  - (b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or more independently selected non-interfering substituents; or
  - (c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a group selected from (a) or (b);
- R<sub>12</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3 atoms other than hydrogen; (that is, the R<sub>12</sub> radical may contain hydrogen atoms, but the remaining atoms comprising the total of 1 to 3 are non-hydrogen);
- R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group); wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of

-13-

R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> must be the combined group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group); and

R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical,

- 5 carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

Preferred Subgroups of Type "A" Indolizine Compounds of the Invention:

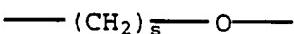
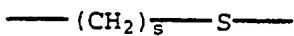
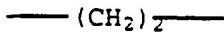
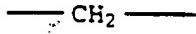
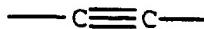
10 A preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein all X are oxygen.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein R<sub>12</sub> is selected  
15 from the group; halo, cyclopropyl, methyl, ethyl, propyl, -O-methyl, and -S-methyl.

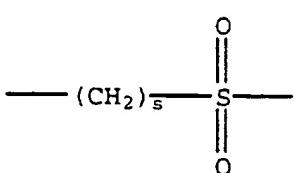
Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA) and (IIIA) are those wherein for R<sub>13</sub>, -(L)- is selected from the group consisting of:

20

-14-

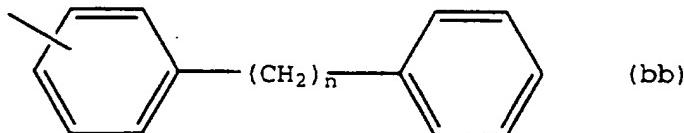


and



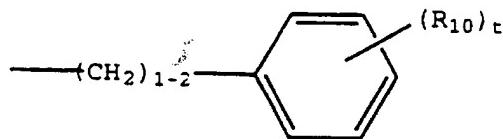
where s is 0 or 1.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein for R<sub>13</sub>, group R<sub>80</sub> 5 is carbocyclic and is selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenyl-cyclohexenyl, acenaphthylenyl, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzylyl and 10 related bibenzylyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),

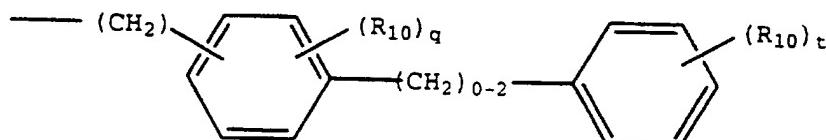


-15-

where n is a number from 1 to 8. Particularly preferred are compounds wherein R<sub>13</sub> is selected from the group consisting of



and



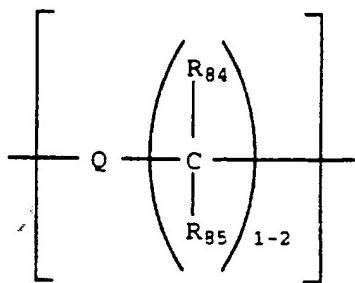
5

where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> haloalkyl, q is a number from 0 to 4, and t is a number from 0 to 5.

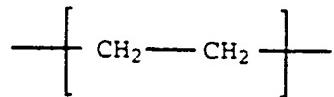
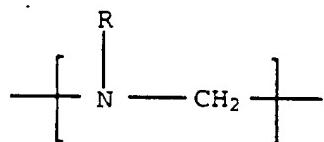
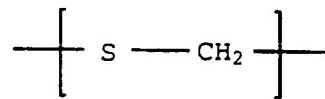
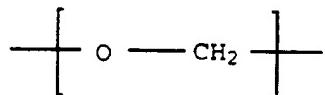
Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein R<sub>18</sub> is a substituent having an acid linker with an acid linker length of 2 or 3.

15 Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein R<sub>18</sub> comprises an acidic group and the acid linker for the acidic group has an acid linker length of 2 or 3 and the acid linker group, -(La)-, for R<sub>18</sub> is selected from the group represented by  
20 the formula;

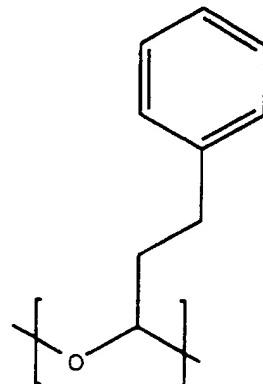
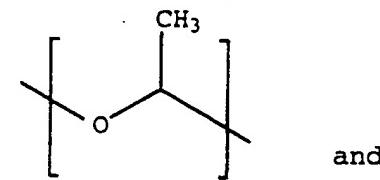
-16-



where Q is selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from  
 5 hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo. Most preferred are compounds where the acid linker, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>18</sub> is selected from the specific groups;



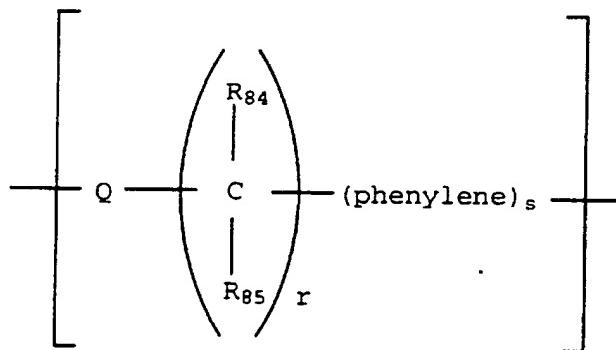
-17-



where R is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein R<sub>17</sub> comprises an acidic group and the acid linker of the R<sub>17</sub> acidic group has an acid linker with an acid linker length of 3 to 10 atoms and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>17</sub> is selected from;

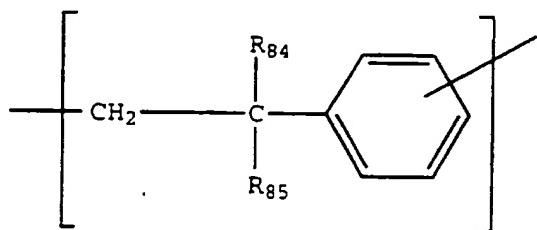
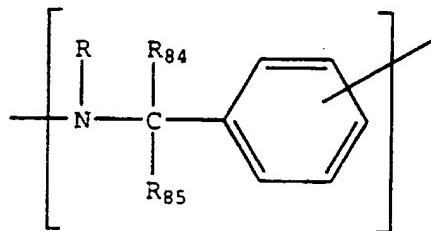
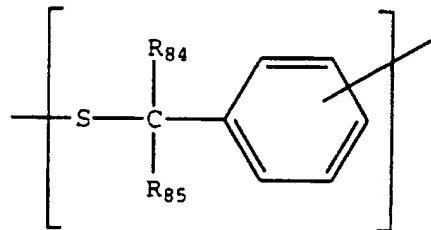
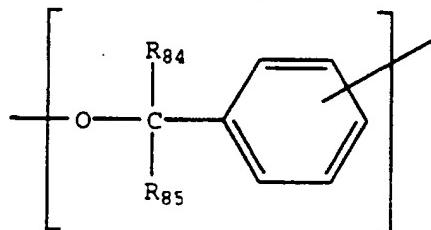
5



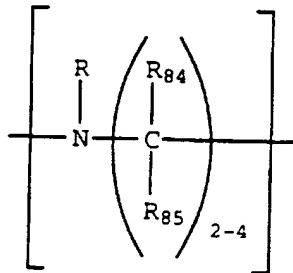
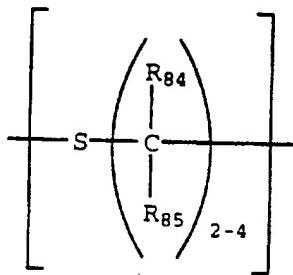
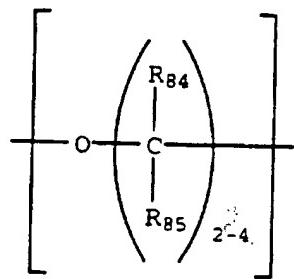
where r is a number from 1 to 7, s is 0 or 1, and Q is selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and

-18-

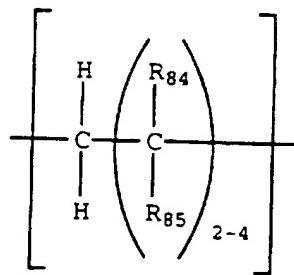
R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo. Most preferred are compounds where the acid linker, -(La)-, for R<sub>17</sub> is  
5 selected from the specific groups:



-19-



and



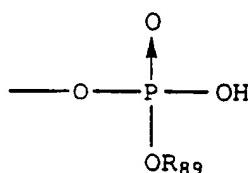
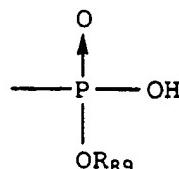
- 5 wherein; R is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

-20-

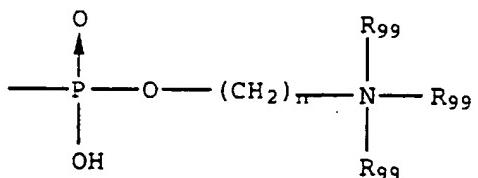
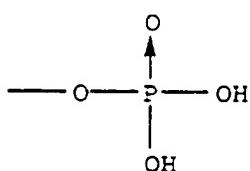
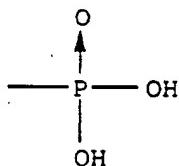
Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA) are those wherein the acidic group (or salt, and prodrug derivatives thereof) on R<sub>17</sub> and/or R<sub>18</sub> is selected from the following:

5

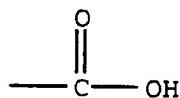
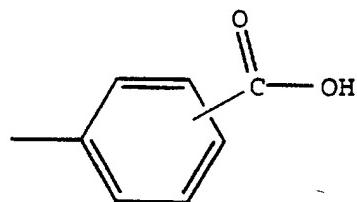
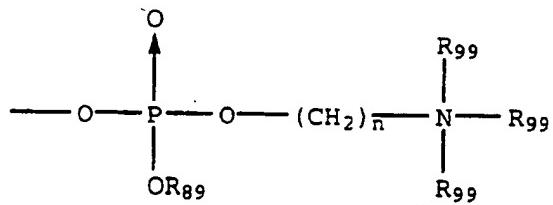
-5-tetrazolyl,  
-SO<sub>3</sub>H,



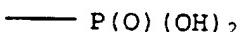
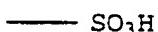
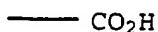
10



-21-



- 5 where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl. Particularly preferred are compounds wherein the acidic group of R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> is selected from;



or salt, and prodrug (e.g., ester) derivatives thereof.

The carboxyl group is the most preferred acidic group. It is highly preferred that only one of R<sub>17</sub> or R<sub>18</sub> contain an

- 15 acidic group.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formula (IA),  
(IIA), and (IIIA) are those wherein R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each  
independently selected from hydrogen and non-interfering  
substituents, with the non-interfering substituents being  
20 selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>

cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyoxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino,

5 C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio,

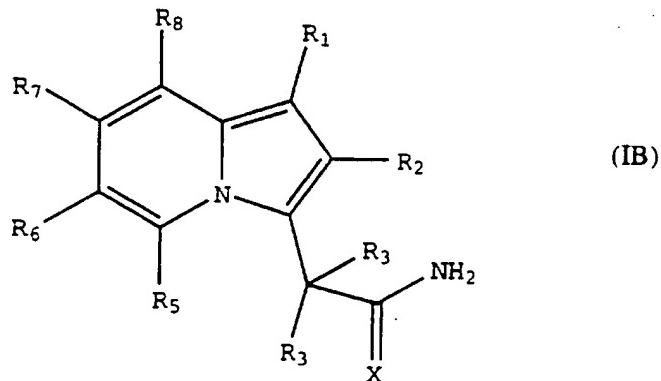
10 -(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl, fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal, thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

15

B) Type "B" indolizine-3-acetamide compounds of the invention having the general formula (IB):

A) The indolizine-3-acetamides are represented by the formula (IB), below:

20

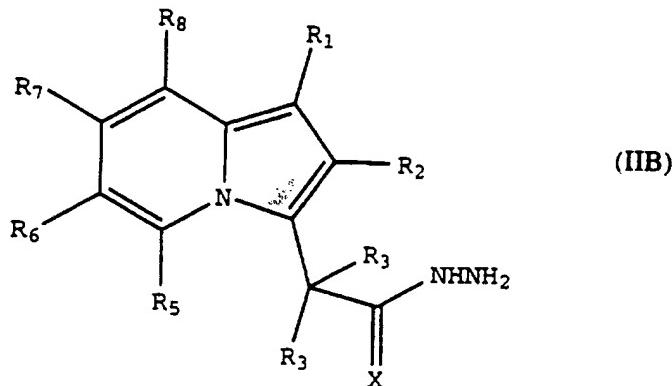


where each R<sub>3</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo; X is selected from oxygen or sulfur; and all other

25 groups are as hereinafter defined.

B) The indolizine-3-hydrazides are represented by the formula (IIB), below:

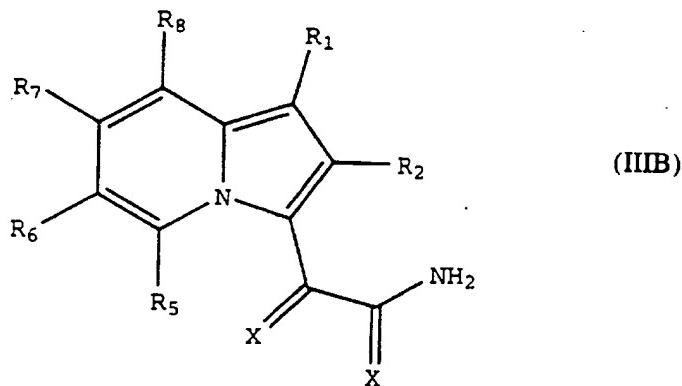
-23-



each R<sub>3</sub> is independently, hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo; X  
 5 is selected from oxygen or sulfur; and all other groups are  
 as hereinafter defined.

C) The indolizine-1-glyoxylamides are represented by the formula (IIIB), below:

10



where each X is independently selected from oxygen and  
 sulfur, and all other groups are as hereinafter defined.

15 For formulae (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) above the  
 remaining groups are defined as follows:

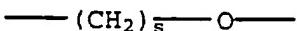
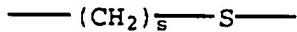
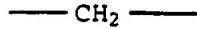
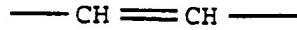
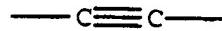
R<sub>1</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;

(a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub>  
 alkynyl, carbocyclic radicals, or heterocyclic radicals, or

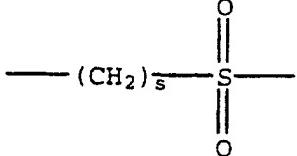
-24-

- (b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or more independently selected non-interfering substituents; or
- (c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a
- 5 divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a group selected from (a) or (b);
- R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3
- 10 atoms other than hydrogen; (that is, the R<sub>2</sub> radical may contain hydrogen atoms, but the remaining atoms comprising the total of 1 to 3 are non-hydrogen);
- R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic
- 15 group); wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> must be the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group);
- R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic
- 20 radicals, carbocyclic radicals substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radicals, and heterocyclic radicals substituted with non-interfering substituents.
- 25 Preferred Subgroups of Type "B" Indolizine Compounds of the Invention:
- A preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein all X are oxygen.
- Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae
- 30 (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein R<sub>2</sub> is selected from the group; halo, cyclopropyl, methyl, ethyl, propyl, -O-methyl, and -S-methyl.
- Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB) and (IIIB) are those wherein for R<sub>1</sub> -(L)- is
- 35 selected from the group consisting of:

-25-

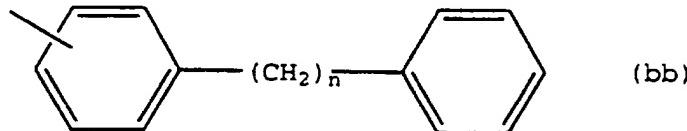


and



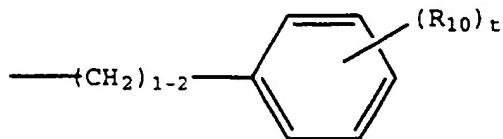
where s is 0 or 1.

- Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IIB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein for R<sub>1</sub>, group R<sub>80</sub>
- 5 is carbocyclic and is selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenyl-cyclohexenyl, acenaphthylene, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzyl and
- 10 related bibenzyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),

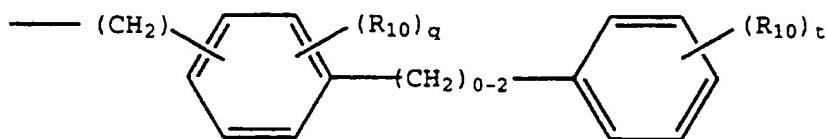


- 15 where n is a number from 1 to 8. Particularly preferred are compounds wherein R<sub>1</sub> is selected from the group consisting of

-26-



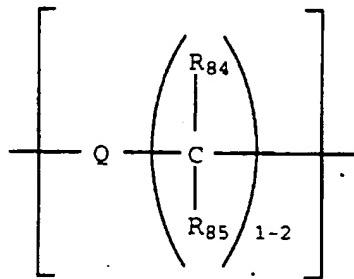
and



where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> haloalkyl, q is a number from 0 to 4, and t is a number from 0 to 5.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein R<sub>5</sub> is a substituent having an acid linker with an acid linker length of 2 or 3.

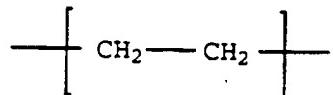
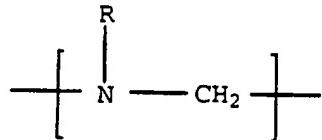
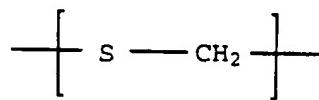
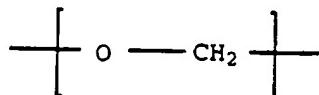
Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein R<sub>5</sub> comprises an acidic group and the acid linker for the acidic group has an acid linker length of 2 or 3 and the acid linker group, -(La)-, for R<sub>5</sub> is selected from the group represented by the formula;



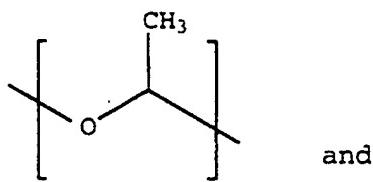
-27-

where Q is selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo. Most preferred are compounds

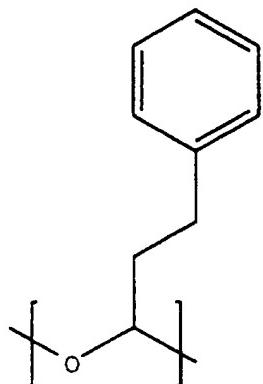
- 5 where the acid linker, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>5</sub> is selected from the specific groups;



-28-



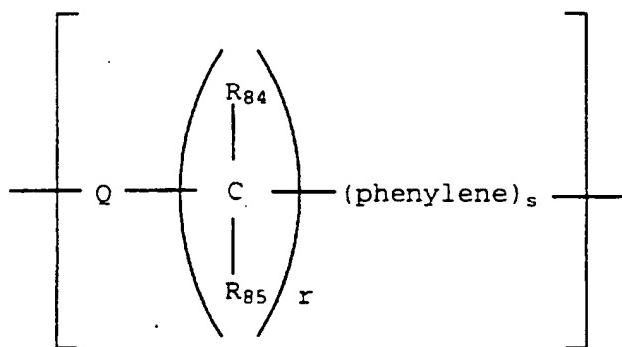
and



where R is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl.

Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB), and (IIIB) are those wherein R<sub>6</sub> comprises an acidic group and the acid linker of the R<sub>6</sub> acidic group has an acid linker with an acid linker length of 3 to 10 atoms and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>6</sub> is selected from;

5



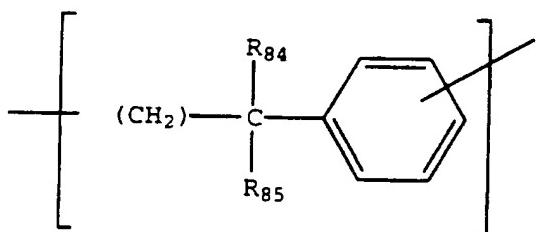
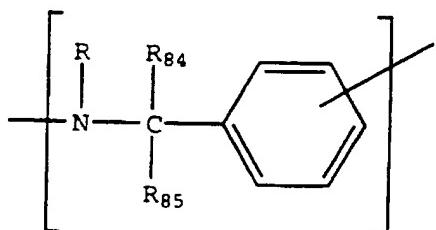
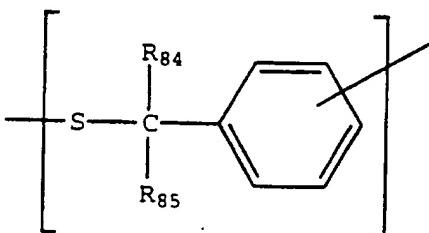
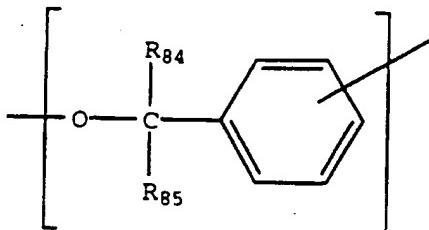
10

where r is a number from 1 to 7, s is 0 or 1, and Q is selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen,

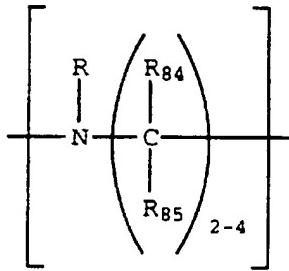
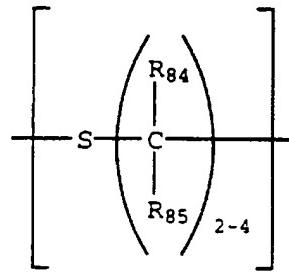
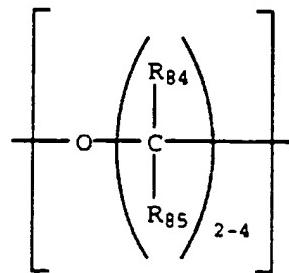
-29-

C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo. Most preferred are compounds where the acid linker, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>6</sub> is selected from the specific groups;

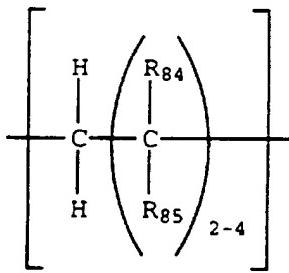
5



-30-



and



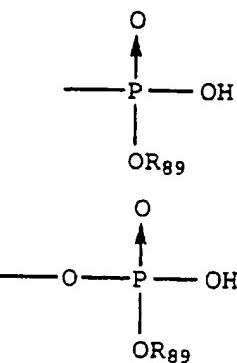
- 5 wherein; R is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

-31-

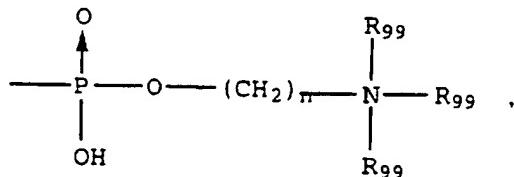
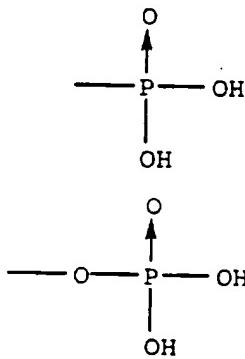
Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB), (IIIB) are those wherein the acidic group (or salt, and prodrug derivatives thereof) on R<sub>5</sub> and/or R<sub>6</sub> is selected from the following:

5

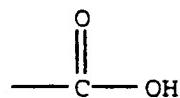
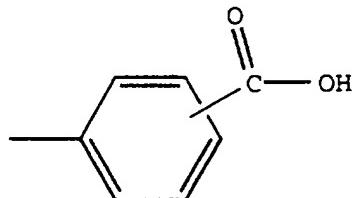
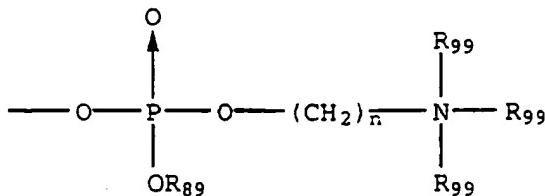
-5-tetrazolyl,  
-SO<sub>3</sub>H,



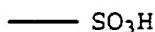
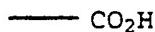
10



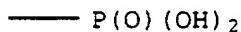
-32-



- 5 where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl. Particularly preferred are compounds wherein the acidic group of R<sub>5</sub> and/or R<sub>6</sub> is selected from;



10



- or salt, and prodrug (e.g., ester) derivatives thereof. The carboxyl group is the most preferred of all acidic groups. It is also highly preferred that only one of R<sub>5</sub> or  
15 R<sub>6</sub> contain an acidic group.

- Another preferred subclass of compounds of formulae (IB), (IIB) and (IIIB) are those wherein R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen and non-interfering substituents, with the non-interfering substituents being  
20 selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>

-33-

cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyoxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino,

5 C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio,

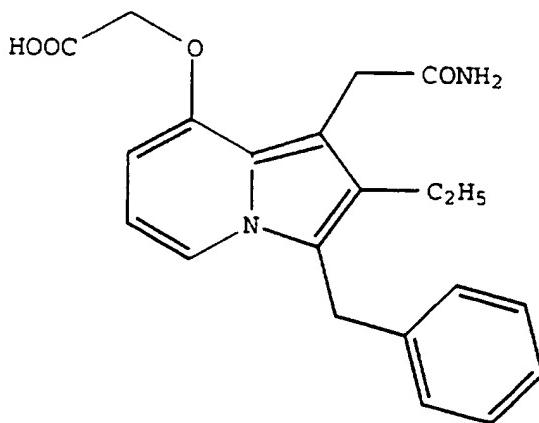
10 -(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl, fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal, thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

15

Specific preferred compounds (inclusive of all pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates and prodrug derivatives thereof) of the invention are represented by formulae shown in Sections (AA), (AB), and (AC) below:

20

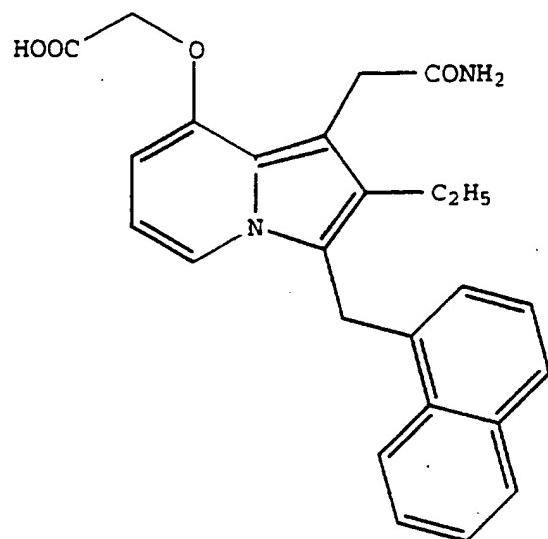
(AA) Indolizine Compounds of type "A" having Acetamide functionality



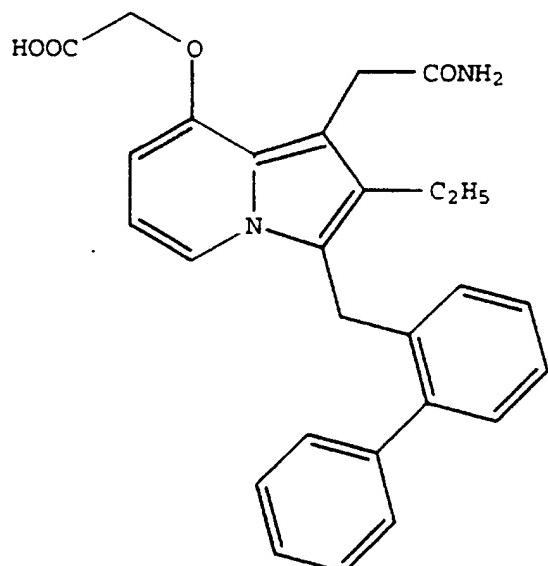
25

(22v)

- 34 -

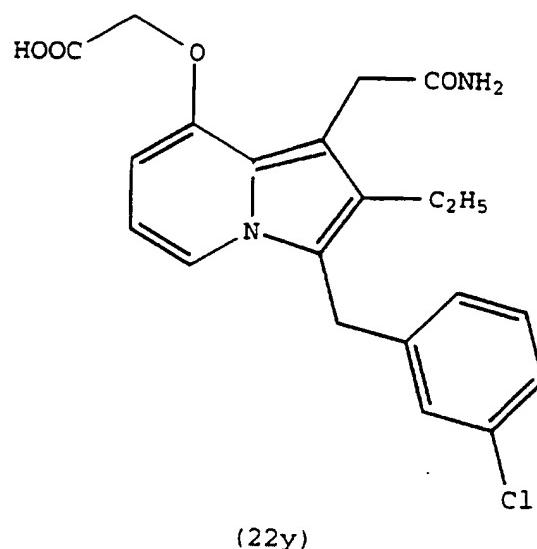


(22w)

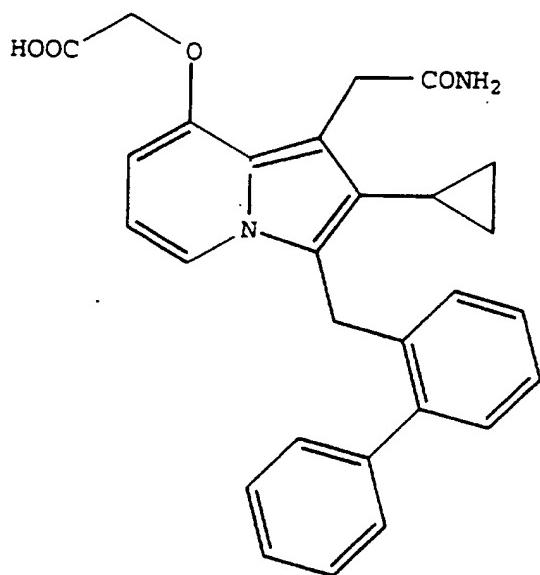


(22x)

- 35 -

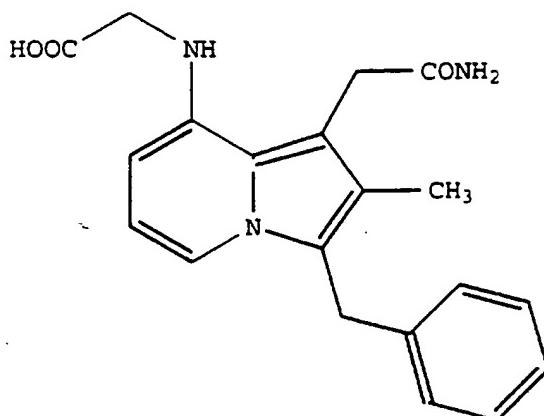


(22y)

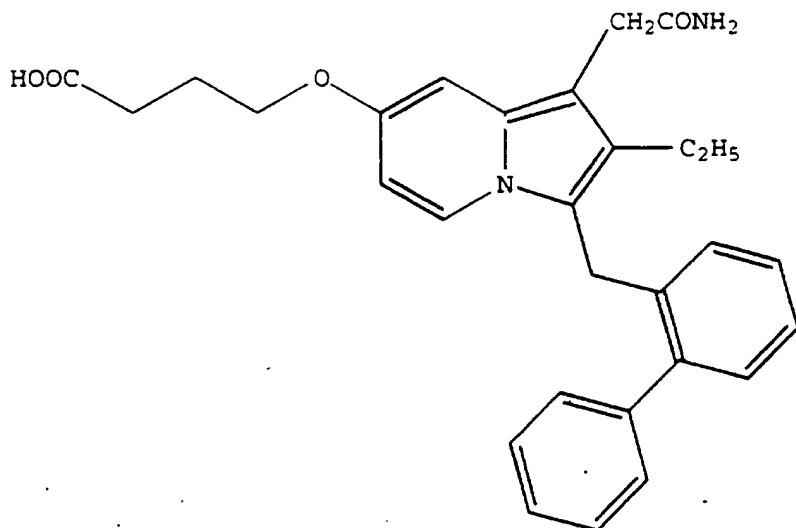


(22z)

-36-



(92)



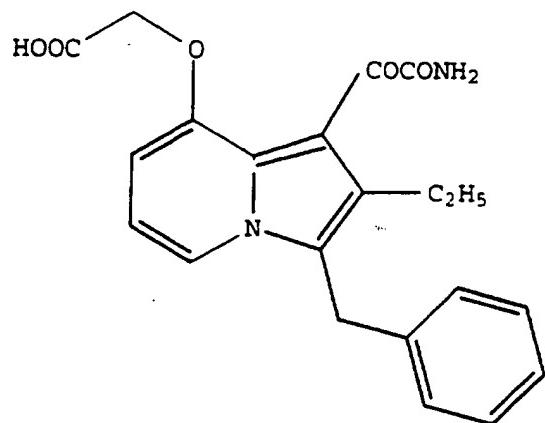
5

(71b)

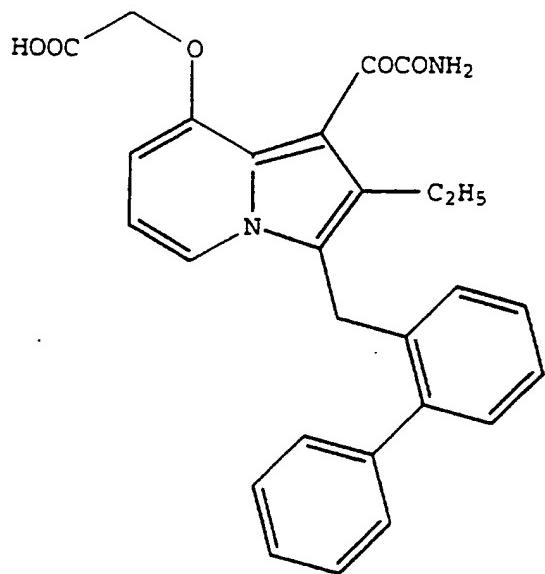
and mixtures of the above compounds.

(AB) Indolizine Compounds of type "A" - with Glyoxylamide functionality

- 37 -



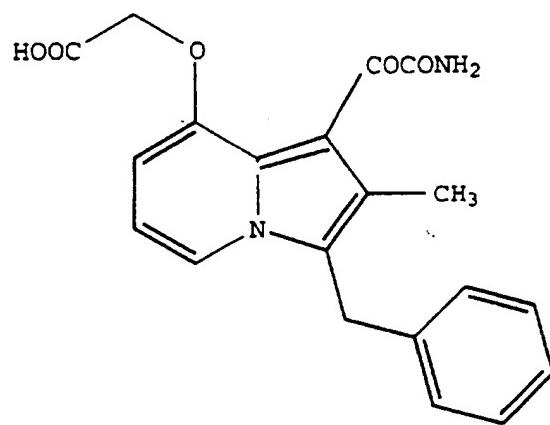
(40a)



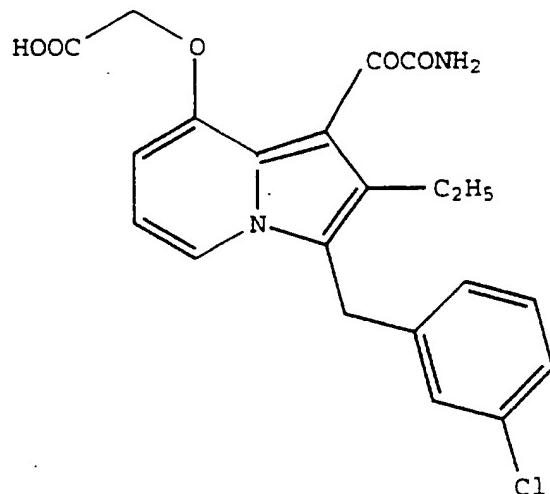
5

(40d)

-38-

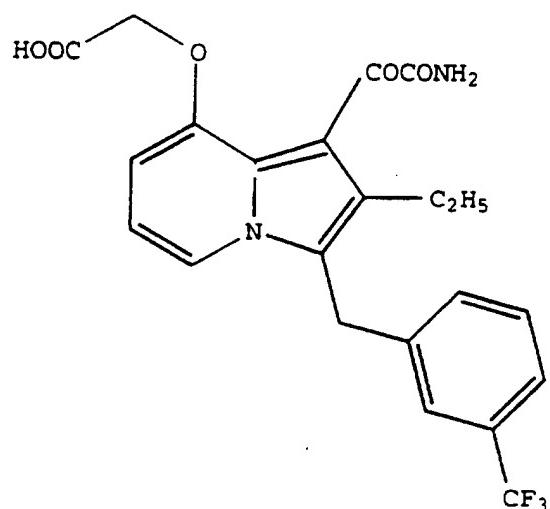


(40g)

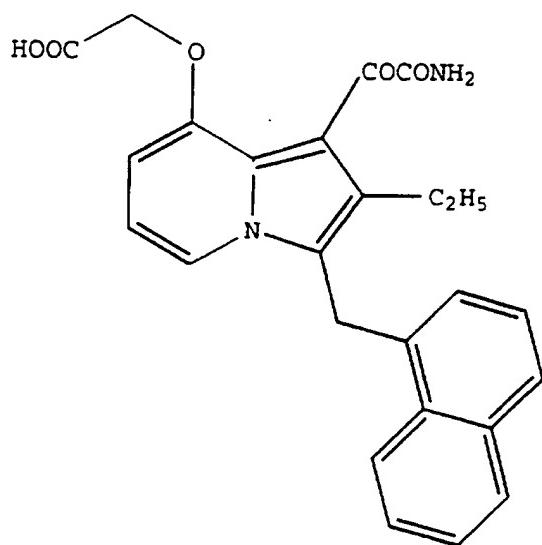


(40h)

-39-



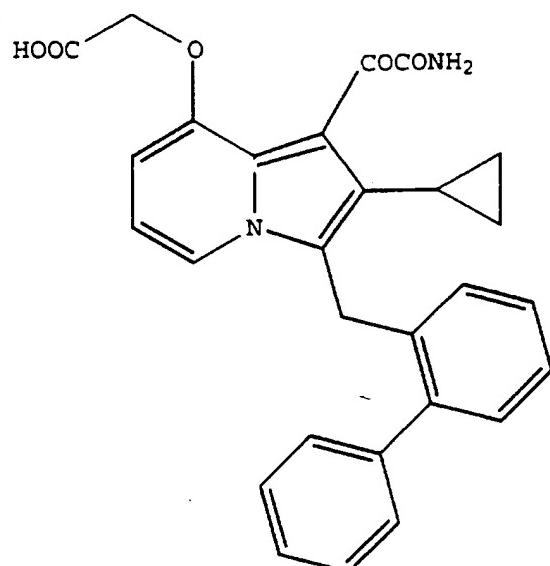
(40i)



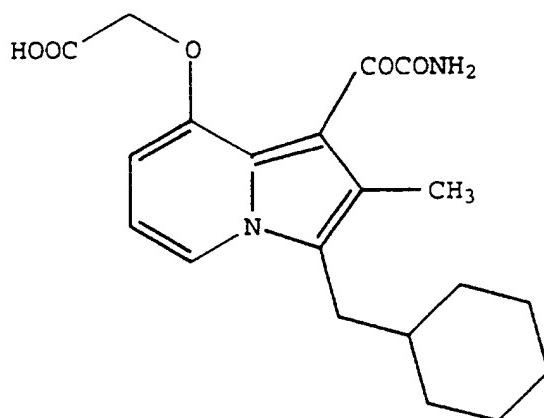
5

(40j)

-40-

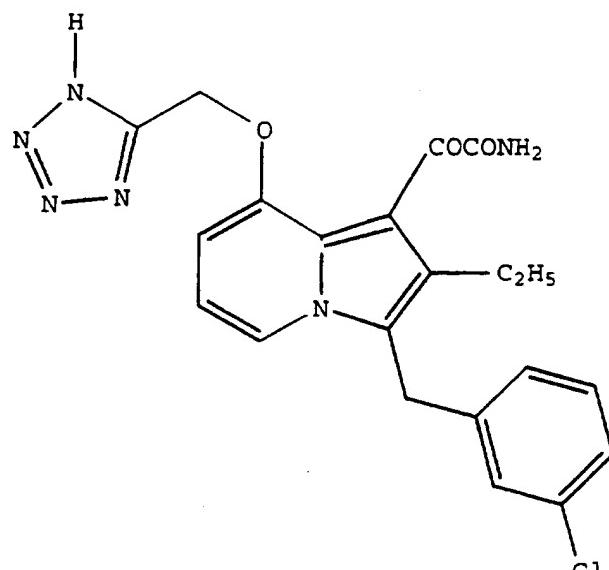


(40k)

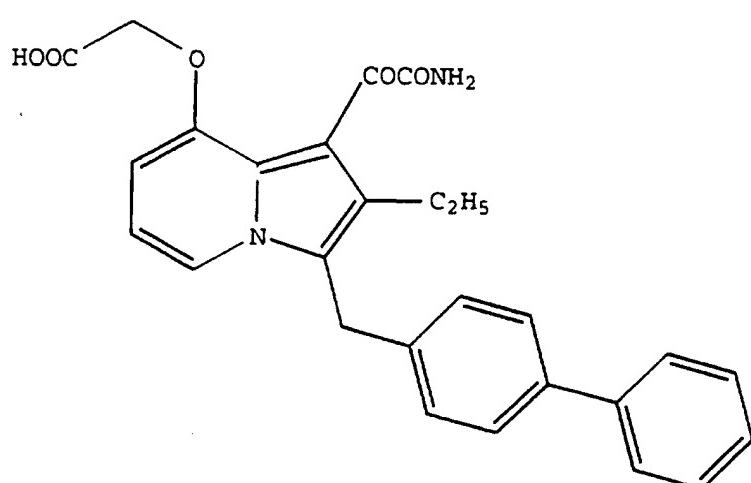


(401)

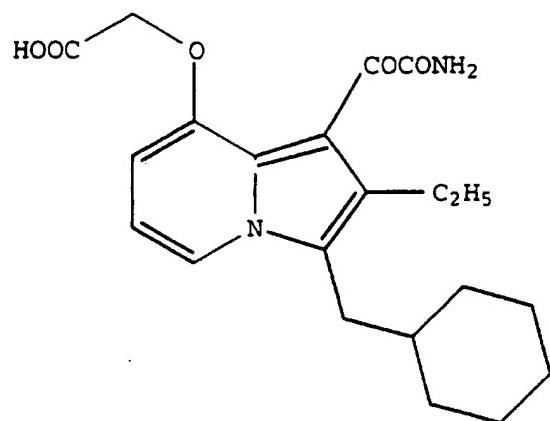
-41-



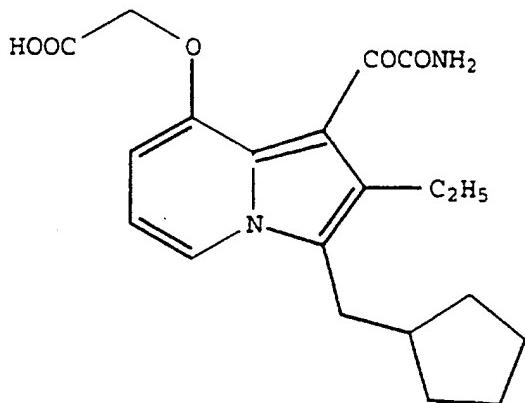
(42)



-42-

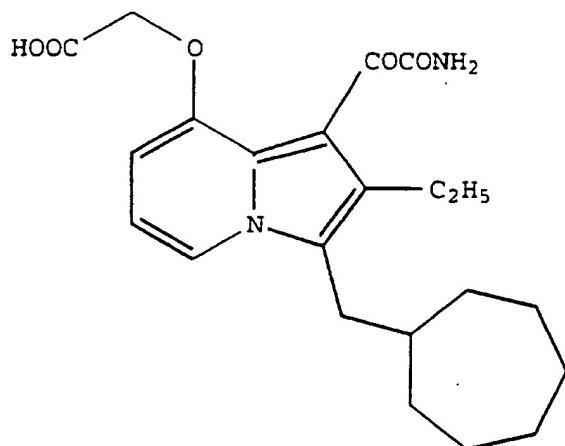


(52b)



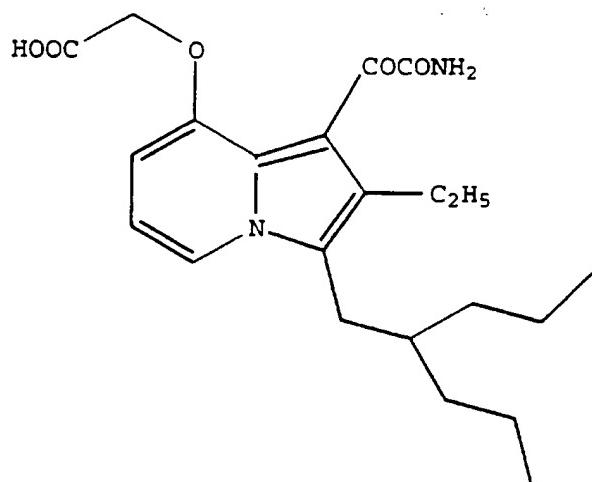
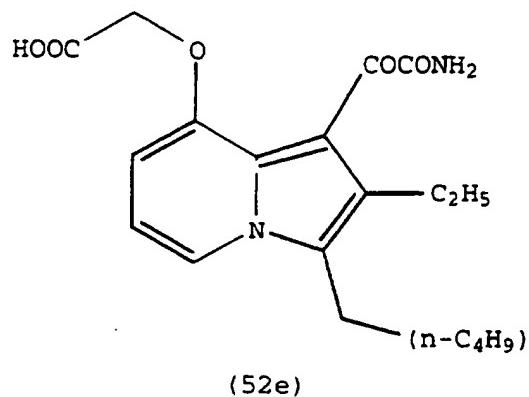
5

(52c)

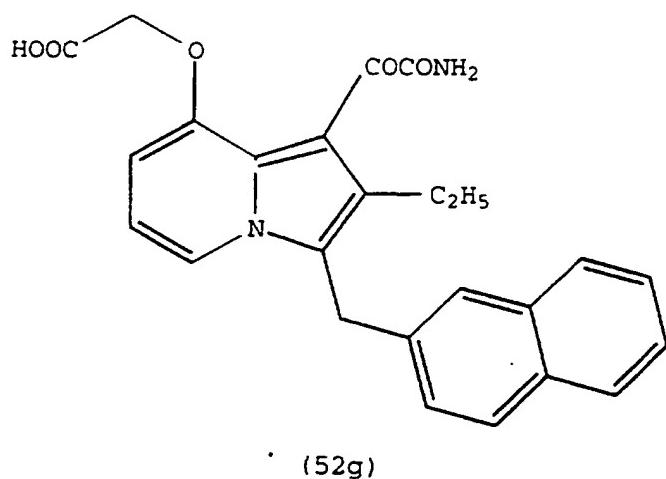


(52d)

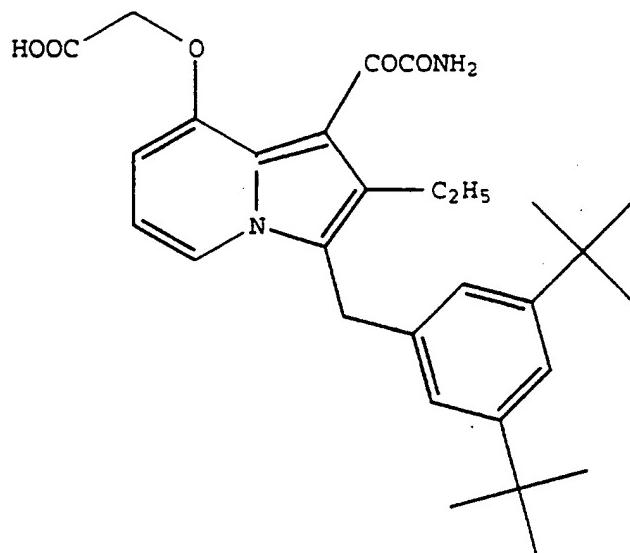
-43-



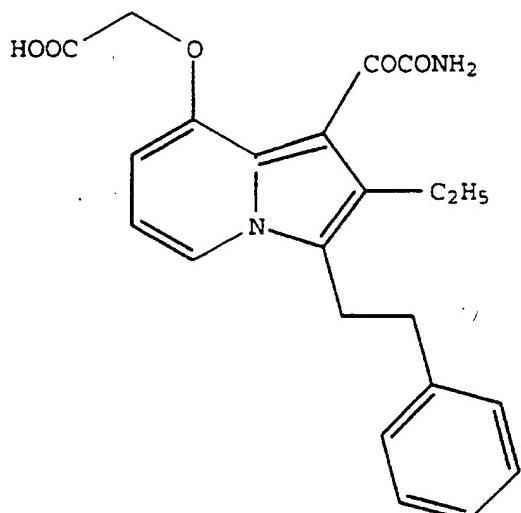
5



- 44 -



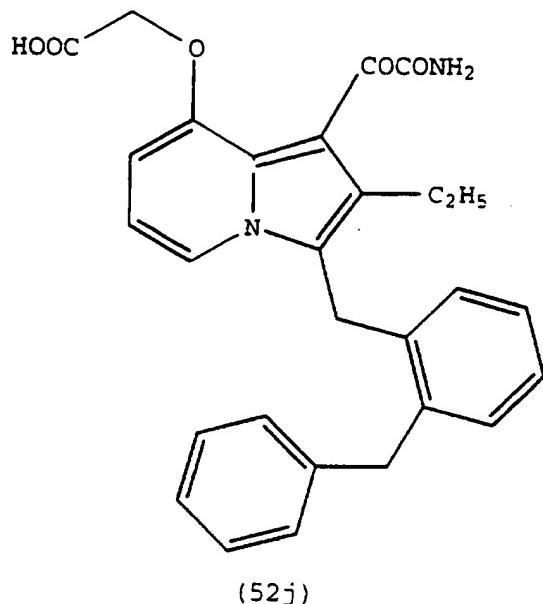
(52h)



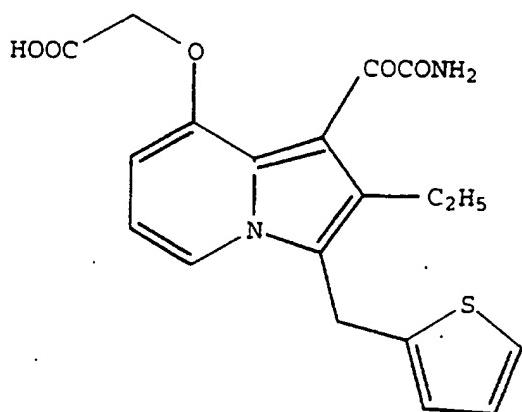
5

(52i)

-45-

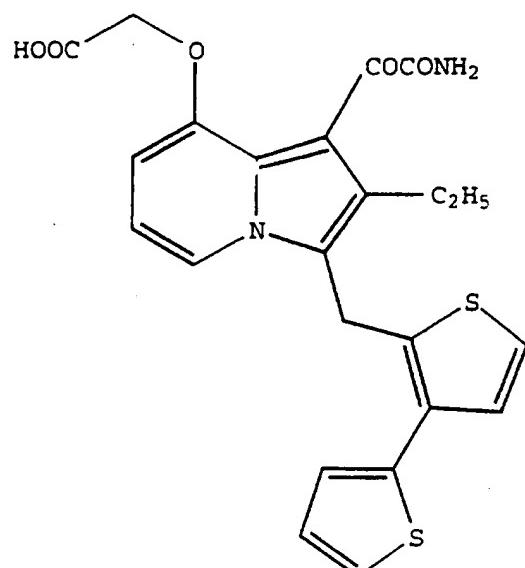


(52j)

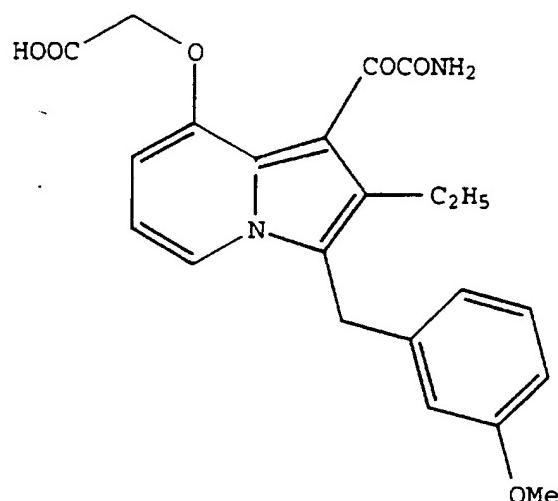


(52k)

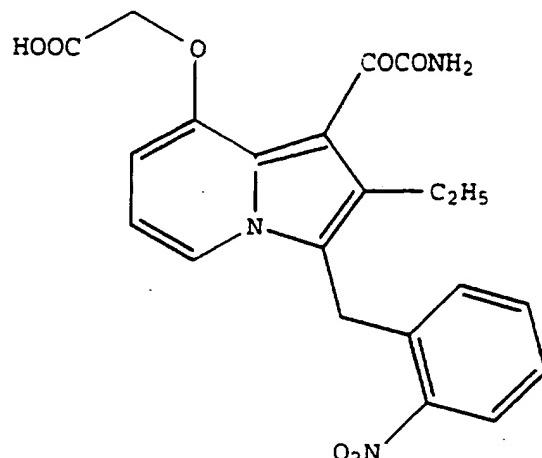
-46-



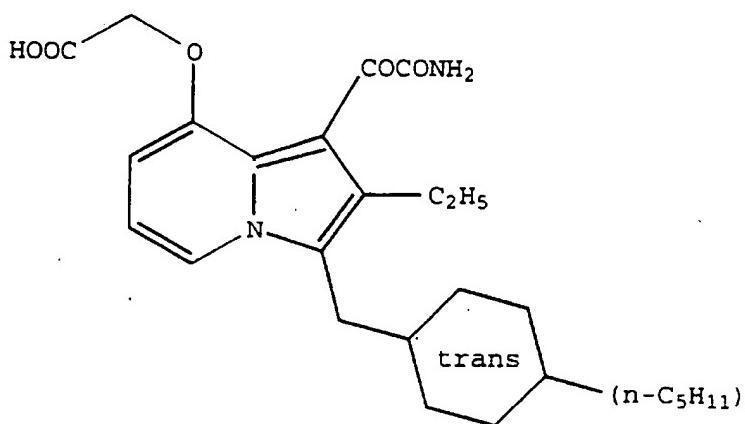
(521)



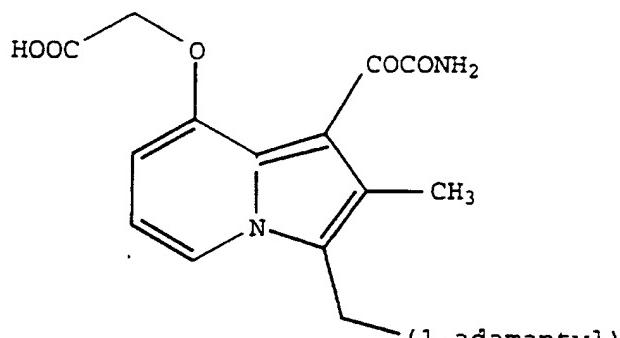
-47-



(52n)

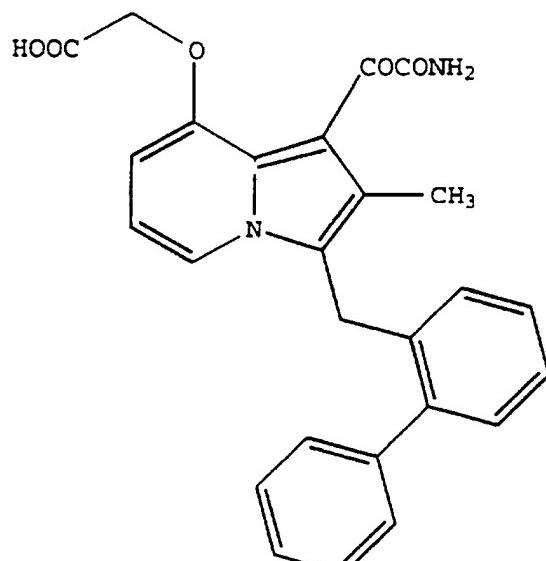


(52o)

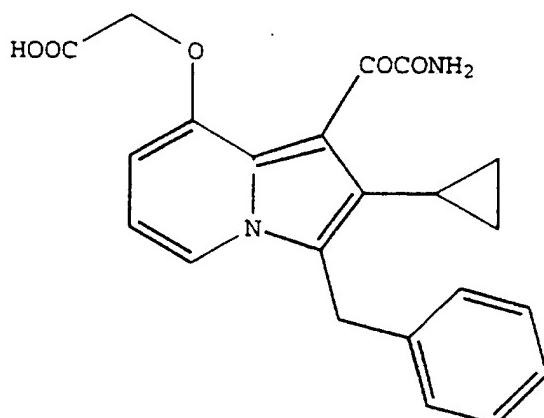


(52p)

- 48 -

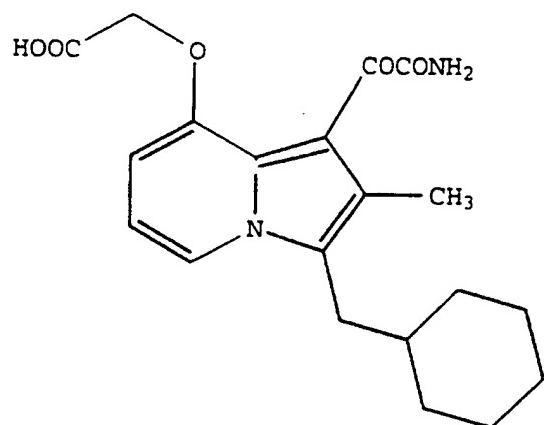
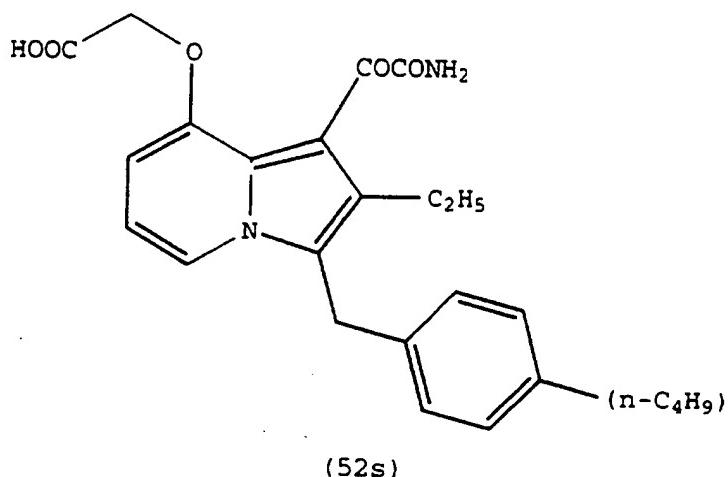


(52q)

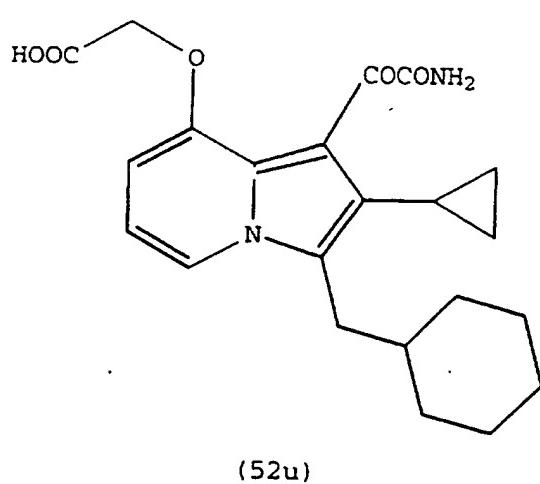


(52r)

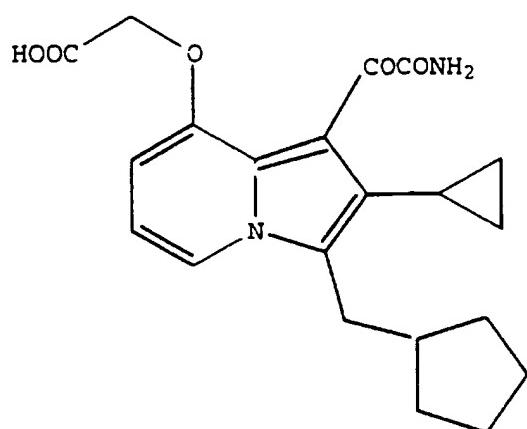
- 49 -



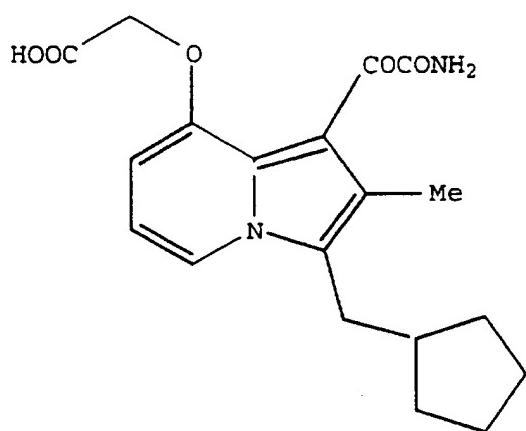
5



-50-



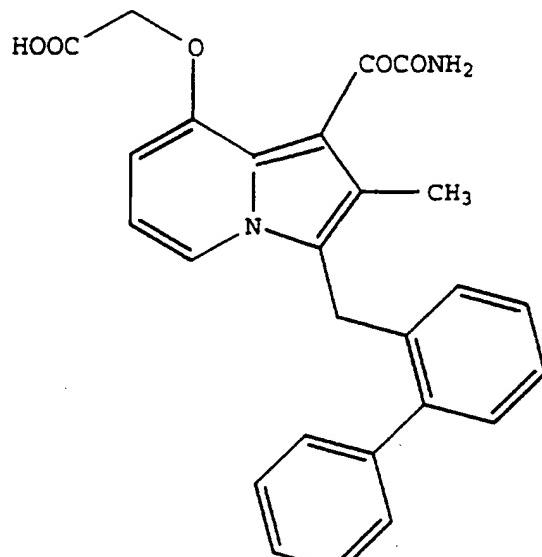
(52v)



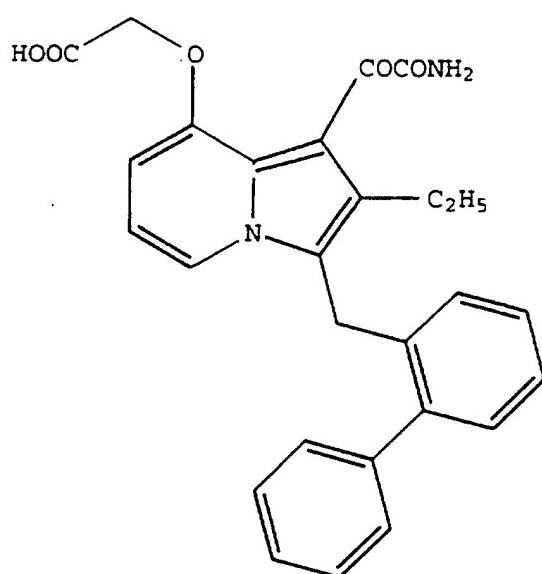
5

(52w)

-51-

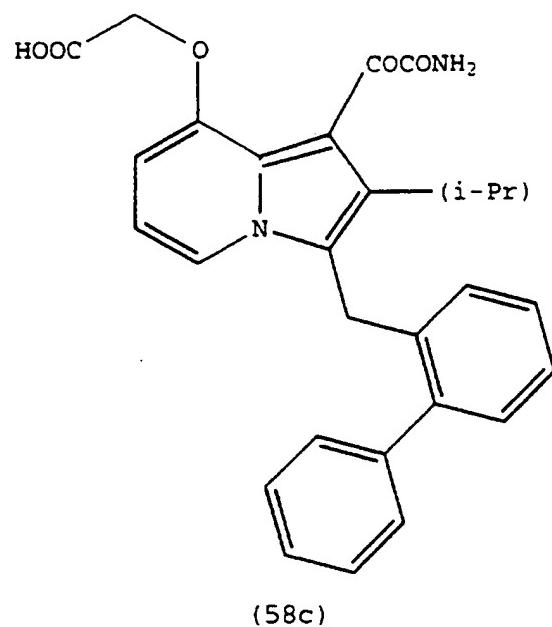


(58a)

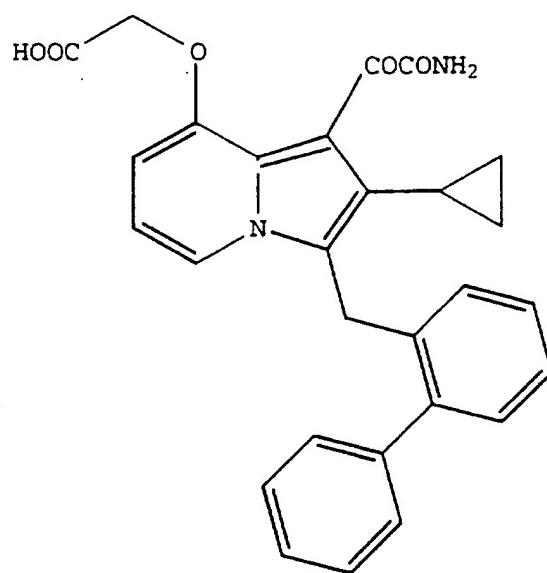


(58b, 40d)

-52-

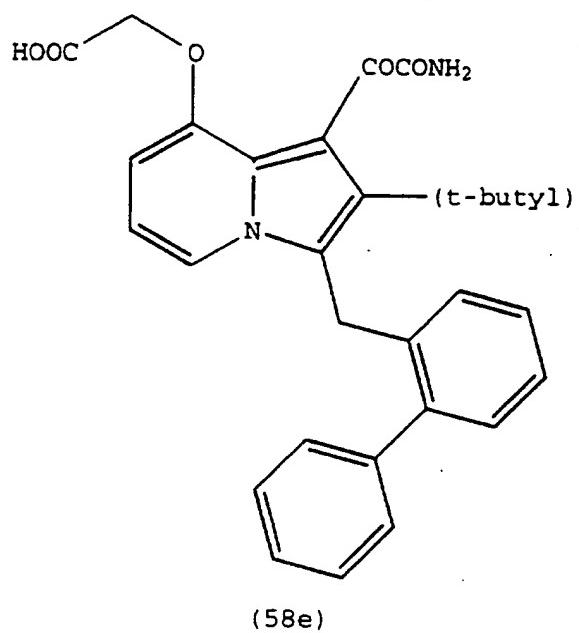


(58c)

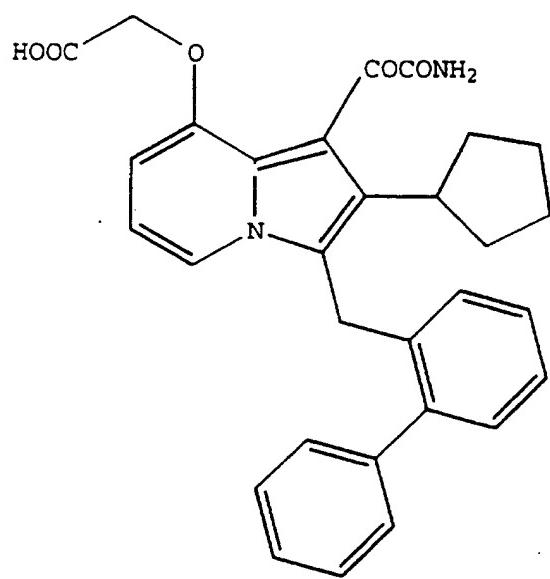


(58d, 40k)

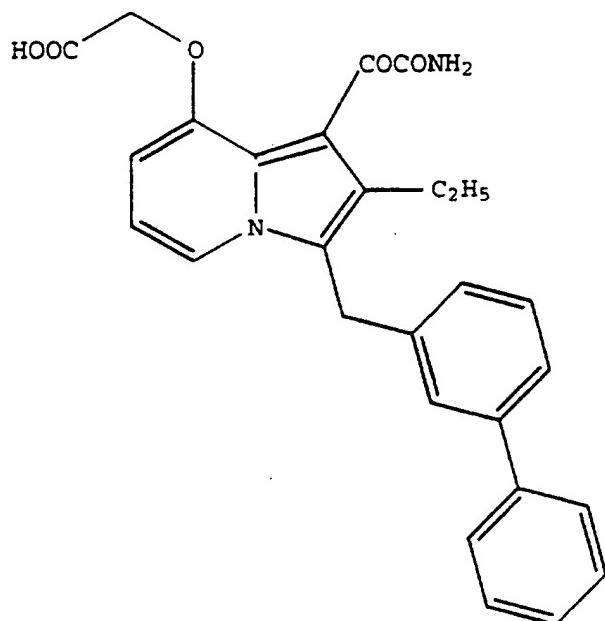
-53-



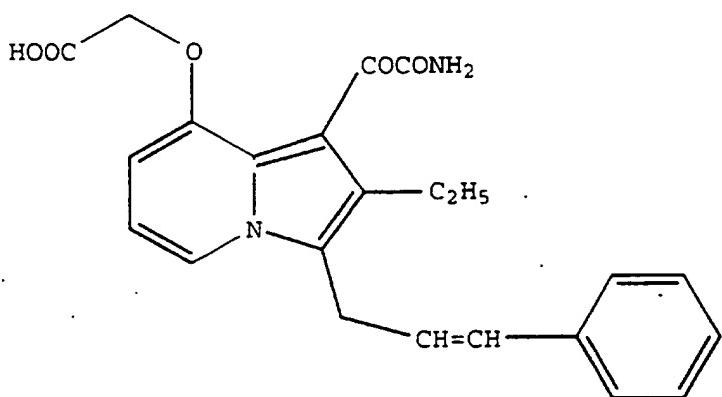
(58e)



-54-

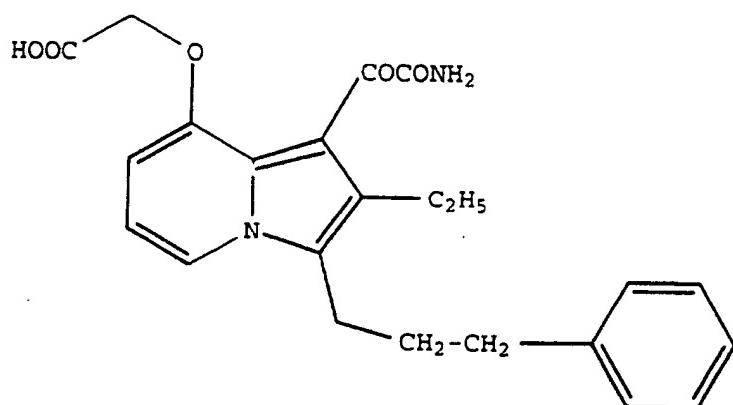


(58g)

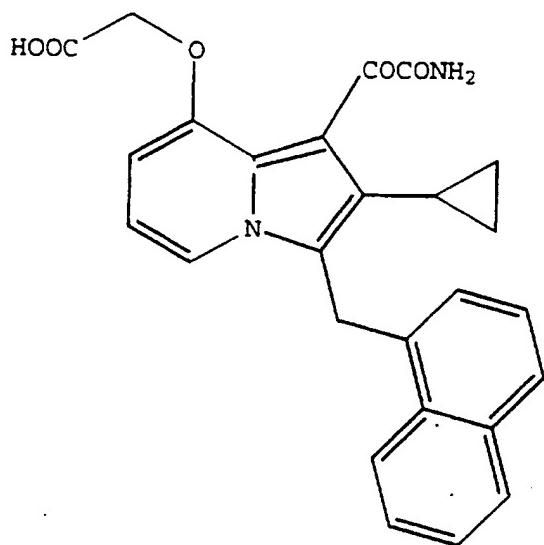


(58h)

- 55 -

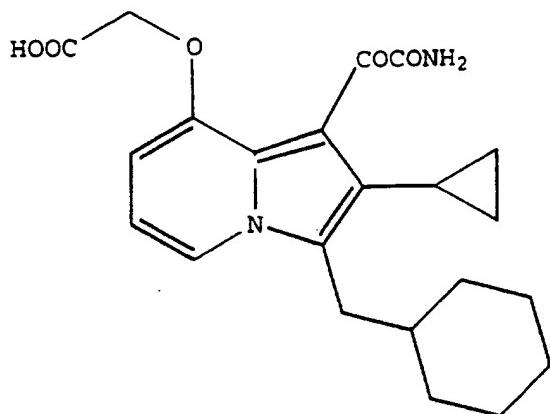


(58i)

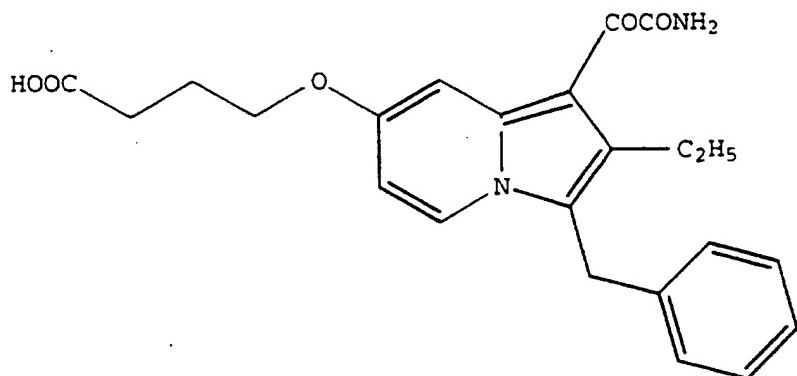


(58j)

-56-

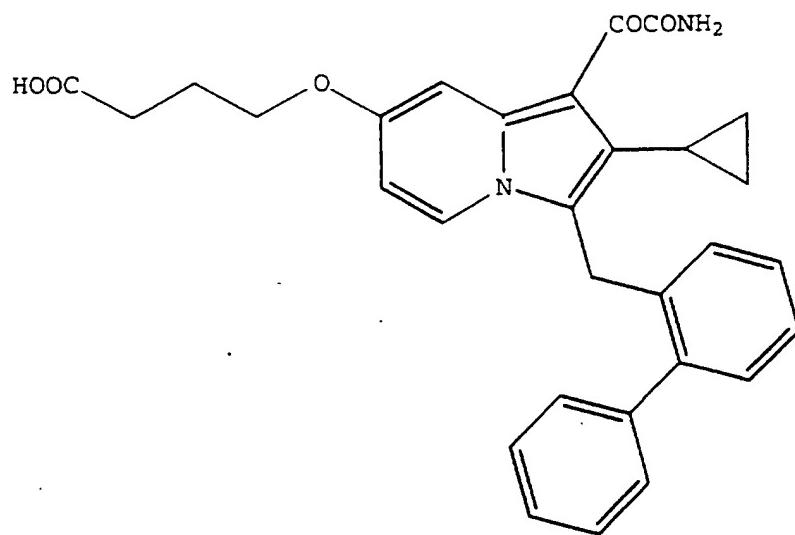


(58k)



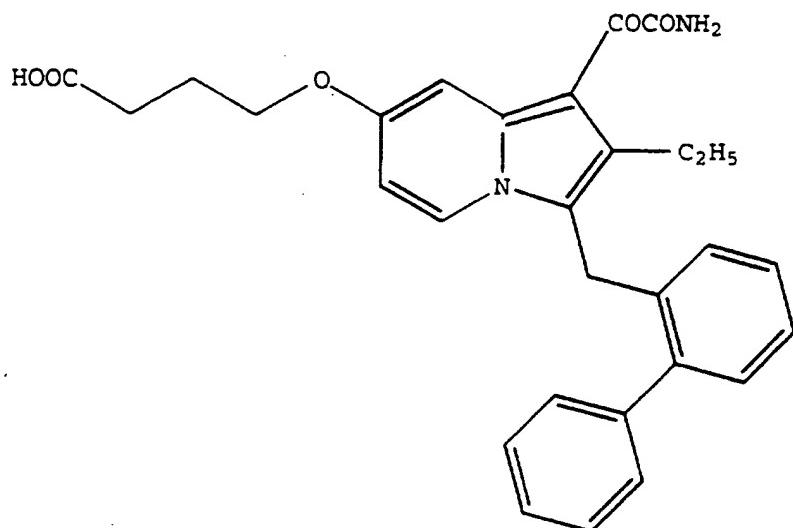
5

(67a)



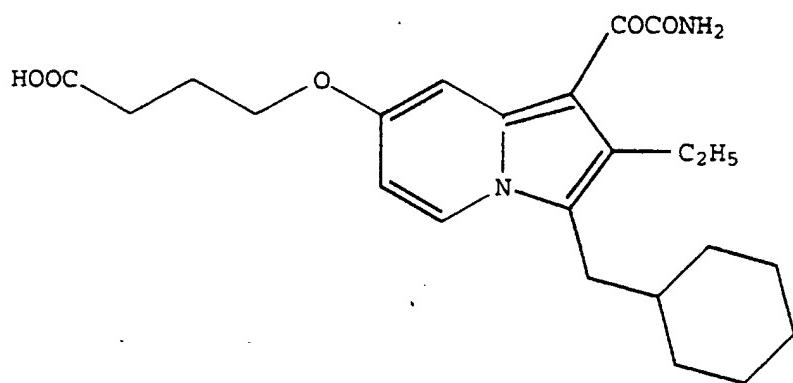
-57-

(67b)



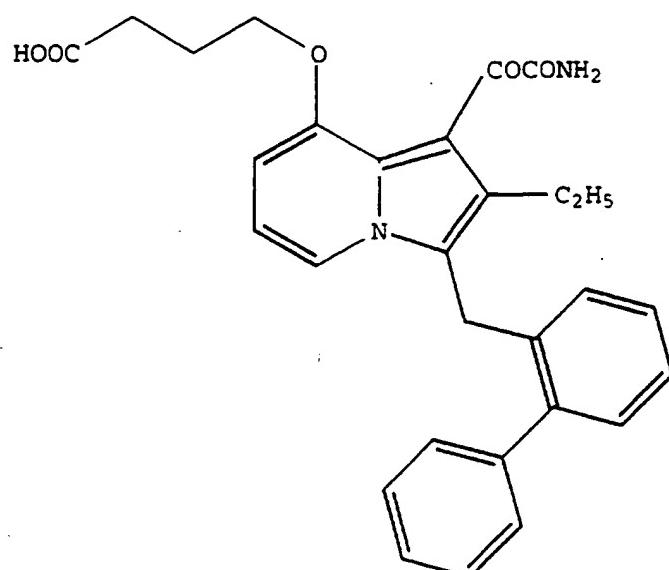
(67c)

5

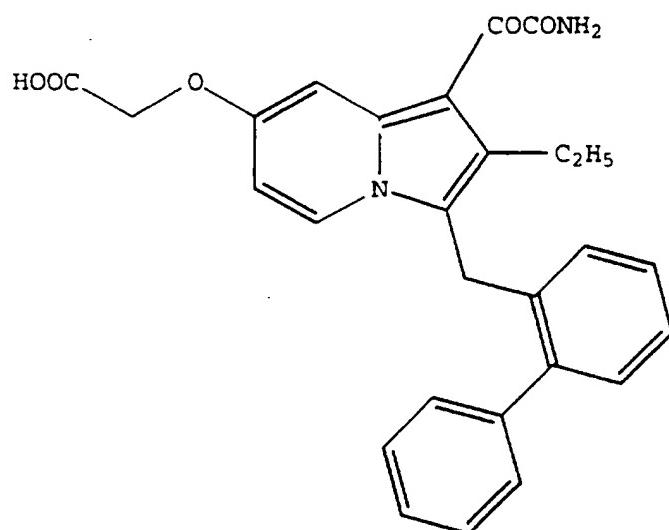


(67d)

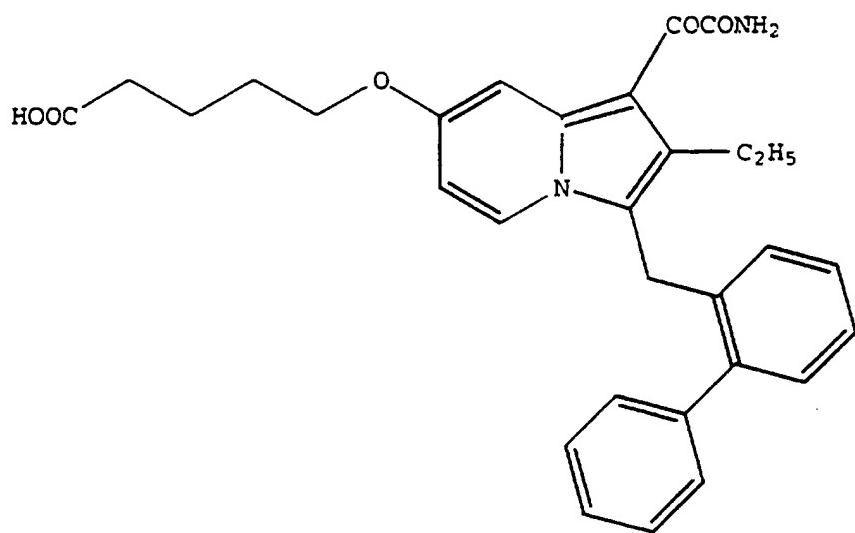
-58-



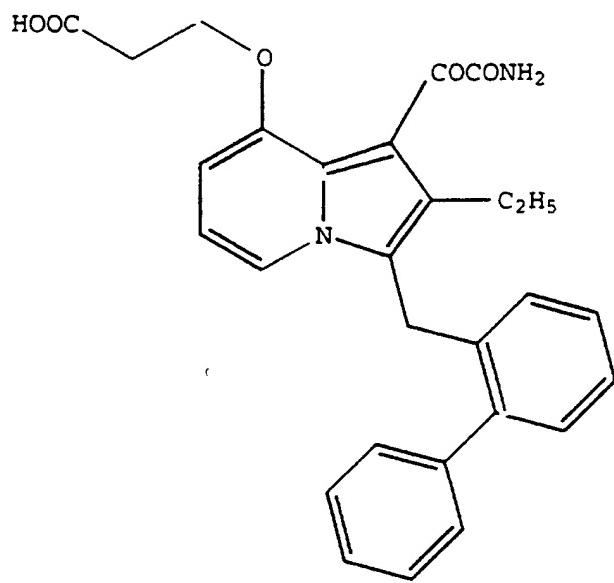
(69a)



-59-

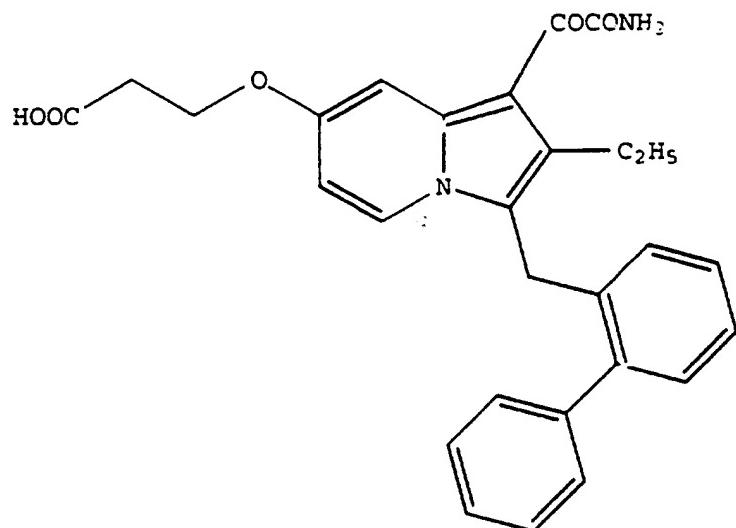


(69c)

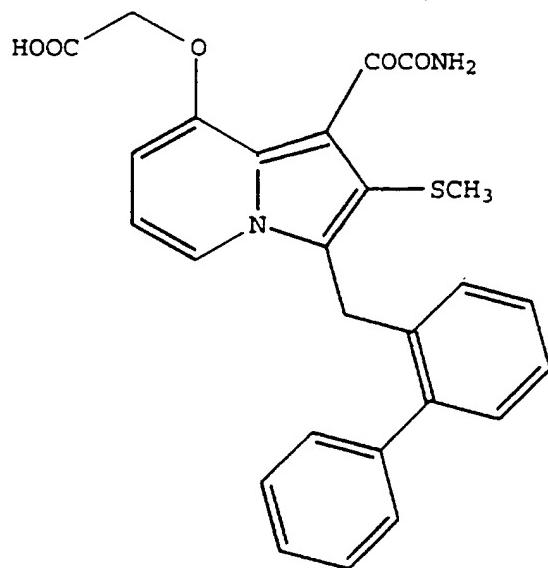


(70a)

-60-

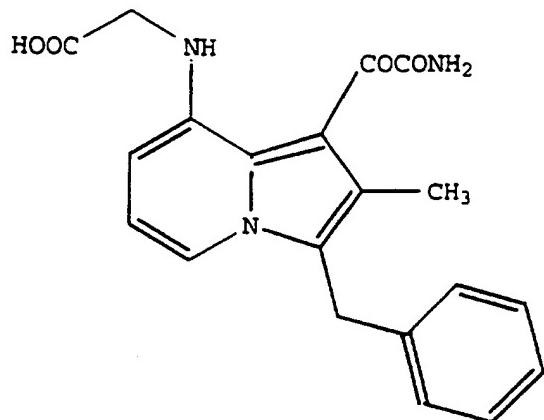


(70b)

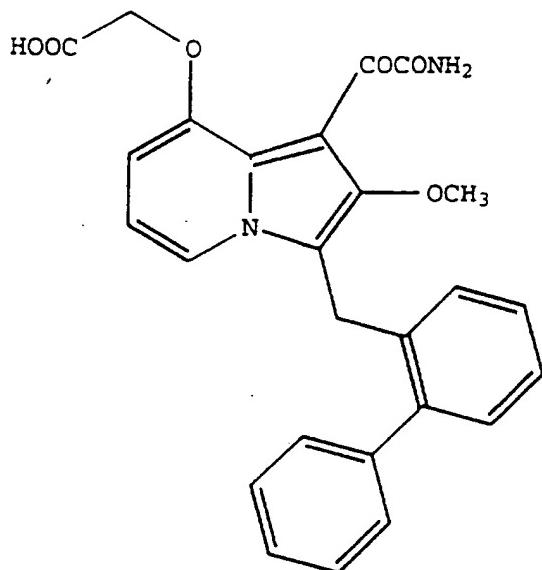


(83)

-61-



(90b)



(97)

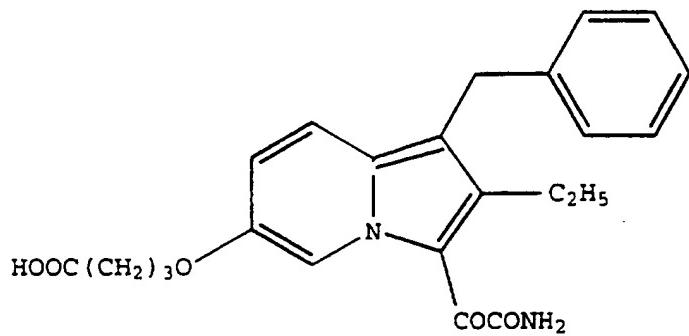
5

and mixtures of the above compounds.

(AC) Indolizine Compounds of type "B" - with Glyoxylamide functionality

10

An indolizine-3-acetamide functional compound and a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is selected from the group represented by the following formulae:



5 and mixtures of the above compounds.

The salts of the above indolizine-1-functional and indolizine-3-functional compounds represented by formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IB), (IIB), (IIIB) and the individual formulae of Sections (AA), (AB) and (AC), supra, are an additional aspect of the invention. In those instances where the compounds of the invention possess acidic or basic functional groups various salts may be formed which are more water soluble and physiologically suitable than the parent compound. Representative pharmaceutically acceptable salts, include but are not limited to, the alkali and alkaline earth salts such as lithium, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, aluminum and the like. Salts are conveniently prepared from the free acid by treating the acid in solution with a base or by exposing the acid to an ion exchange resin.

Included within the definition of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are the relatively non-toxic, inorganic and organic base addition salts of compounds of the present invention, for example, ammonium, quaternary ammonium, and amine cations, derived from nitrogenous bases of sufficient basicity to form salts with the compounds of this invention (see, for example, S. M. Berge, et al., "Pharmaceutical Salts," *J. Pharm. Sci.*, 66: pp.1-19 (1977)). Moreover, the basic group(s) of the compounds of the invention may be reacted with suitable organic or inorganic acids to form

-63-

salts such as acetate, benzenesulfonate, benzoate,  
bicarbonate, bisulfate, bitartrate, borate, bromide,  
camsylate, carbonate, chloride, clavulanate, citrate,  
chloride, edetate, edisylate, estolate, esylate, fluoride,  
5 fumarate, gluceptate, gluconate, glutamate,  
glycolylarsanilate, hexylresorcinate, bromide, chloride,  
hydroxynaphthoate, iodide, isothionate, lactate,  
lactobionate, laurate, malate, malseate, mandelate, mesylate,  
methylbromide, methylnitrate, methylsulfate, mucate,  
10 napsylate, nitrate, oleate, oxalate, palmitate, pantothenate,  
phosphate, polygalacturonate, salicylate, stearate,  
subacetate, succinate, tannate, tartrate, tosylate,  
trifluoroacetate, trifluoromethane sulfonate, and valerate.

Certain compounds of the invention may possess one or  
15 more chiral centers and may thus exist in optically active  
forms. Likewise, when the compounds contain an alkenyl or  
alkenylene group there exists the possibility of cis- and  
trans- isomeric forms of the compounds. The R- and S-  
isomers and mixtures thereof, including racemic mixtures as  
20 well as mixtures of cis- and trans- isomers, are contemplated  
by this invention. Additional asymmetric carbon atoms can be  
present in a substituent group such as an alkyl group. All  
such isomers as well as the mixtures thereof are intended to  
be included in the invention. If a particular stereoisomer  
25 is desired, it can be prepared by methods well known in the  
art by using stereospecific reactions with starting materials  
which contain the asymmetric centers and are already resolved  
or, alternatively by methods which lead to mixtures of the  
stereoisomers and subsequent resolution by known methods.

30 Prodrugs are derivatives of the compounds of the  
invention which have chemically or metabolically cleavable  
groups and become by solvolysis or under physiological  
conditions the compounds of the invention which are  
pharmaceutically active in vivo. The prodrug derivative form  
35 often offers advantages of solubility, tissue compatibility,  
or delayed release in a mammalian organism (see, Bundgard,

-64-

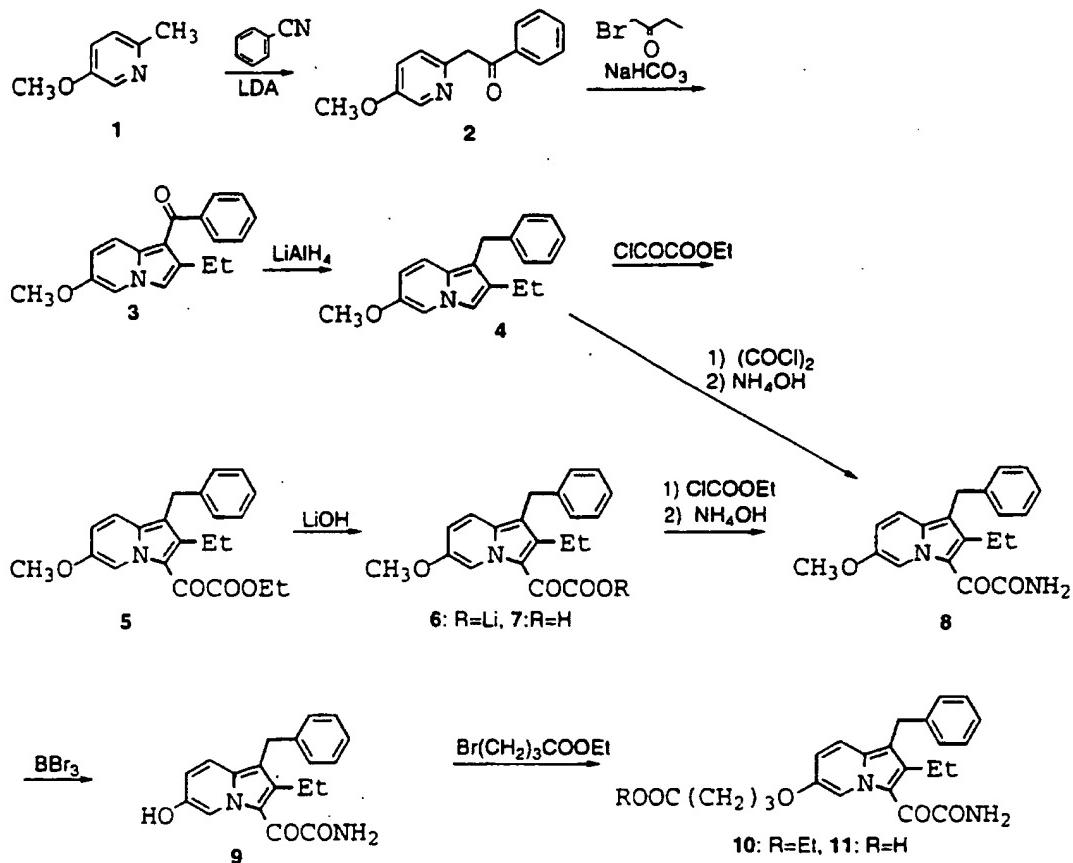
H., Design of Prodrugs, pp. 7-9, 21-24, Elsevier, Amsterdam 1985). Prodrugs include acid derivatives well known to practitioners of the art, such as, for example, esters prepared by reaction of the parent acidic compound with a 5 suitable alcohol, or amides prepared by reaction of the parent acid compound with a suitable amine. Simple aliphatic or aromatic esters derived from acidic groups pendent on the compounds of this invention are preferred prodrugs. In some cases it is desirable to prepare double ester type prodrugs 10 such as (acyloxy) alkyl esters or ((alkoxycarbonyl)oxy)alkyl esters.

#### Synthesis Methods

15 The following abbreviations are used throughout the synthesis Schemes and Examples:

Bn	benzyl
THF	tetrahydrofuran
20 LAH	lithium aluminum hydride
LDA	lithium diisopropyl amine
DBU	1,8-diazabicyclo [5.4.0]undec-7-ene

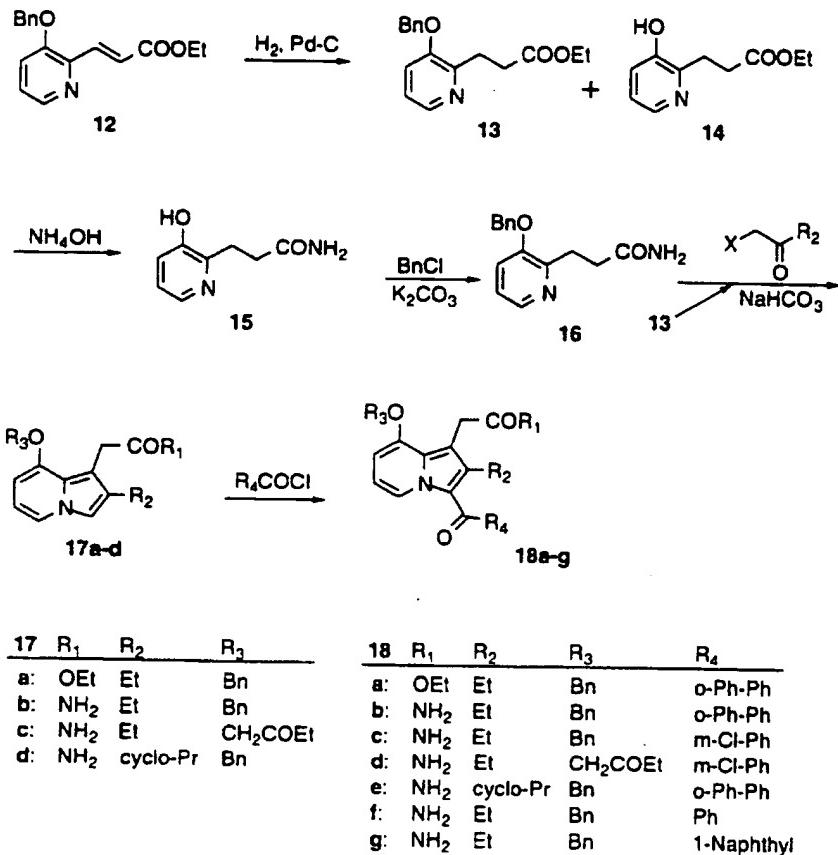
- 65 -

Scheme 1 - Part 1

5       The anion of 2-methyl-5-methoxypyridine is formed in THF using lithium diisopropyl amide and reacted with benzonitrile to produce 2. Alkylation of the nitrogen of 2 by 1-bromo-2-butanone followed by base catalyzed cyclization forms 3 which is reduced by LAH to 4. Sequential treatment of 4 with oxalyl 10 chloride and ammonia gives 8. Alternatively, 4 is acylated with ethyl oxalyl chloride to give 5 which is converted to 6 with lithium hydroxide and then to 8 by sequential treatment with ethyl chloroformate and ammonium hydroxide.

10      Demethylation of 8 by  $\text{BBr}_3$  yields 9 which is O-alkylated 15 using base and ethyl 4-bromobutyrate to form 10. Hydrolysis of 10 by aqueous base produces 11.

- 66 -

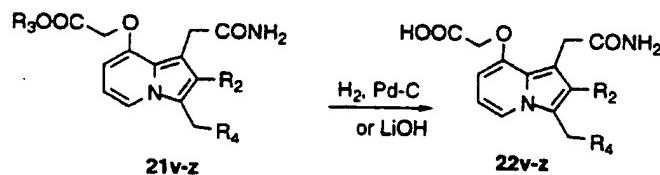
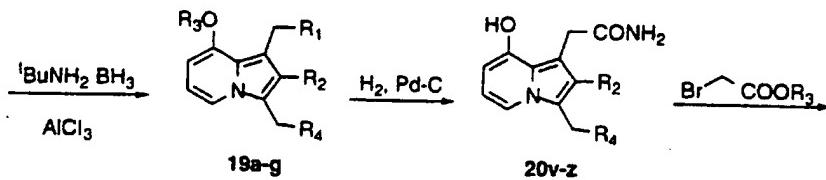
Scheme 2 - Part 1

5

Compound 12 (N. Desidiri, A. Galli, I. Sestili, and M. L. Stein, *Arch. Pharm. (Weinheim)* **325**, 29, (1992)) is reduced by hydrogen in the presence of Pd/C to 14 which gives 15 on ammonolysis using ammonium hydroxide. O-alkylation of 15 using benzyl chloride and base affords 16. Alkylation of the nitrogen atom of 13 or 16 by 1-bromo-2-ketones followed by base catalyzed cyclization yields indolizines 17 which are acylated by aroyl halides to form 18.

10

-67-

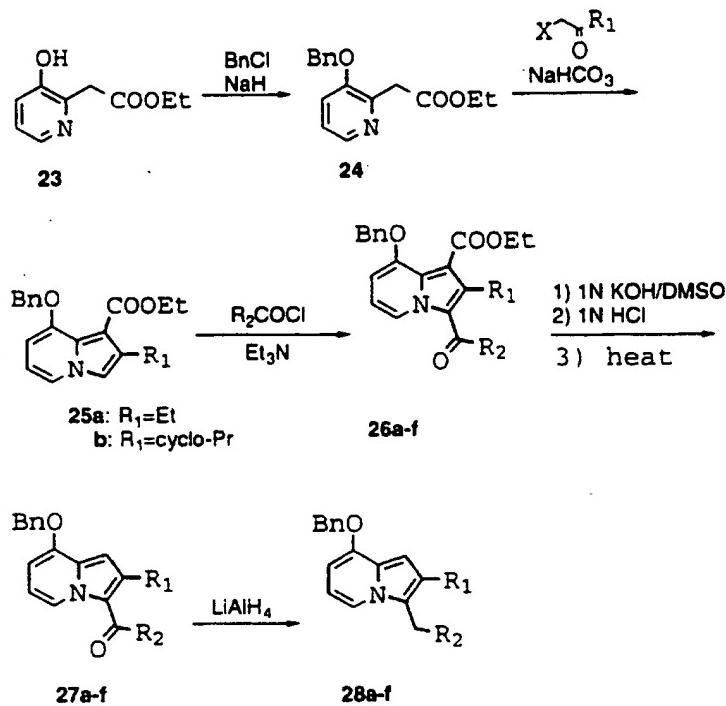
Scheme 2 - Part 2

<b>19</b>	<b>R<sub>1</sub></b>	<b>R<sub>2</sub></b>	<b>R<sub>3</sub></b>	<b>R<sub>4</sub></b>
a:	CH <sub>2</sub> OH	Et	Bn	o-Ph-Ph
b:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	Et	Bn	o-Ph-Ph
c:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	Et	CH <sub>2</sub> CH(OH)Et	m-Cl-Ph
d:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	Et	Bn	m-Cl-Ph
e:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	cyclo-Pr	Bn	o-Ph-Ph
f:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	Et	Bn	Ph
g:	CONH <sub>2</sub>	Et	Bn	1-Naphthyl

<b>20-22</b>	<b>R<sub>2</sub></b>	<b>R<sub>3</sub></b>	<b>R<sub>4</sub></b>
v:	Et	Et	Ph
w:	Et	Me	1-Naphthyl
x:	Et	Bn	o-Ph-Ph
y:	Et	Bn	m-Cl-Ph
z:	cyclo-Pr	Me	o-Ph-Ph

- 5      Reduction of 18 by tert-butylamine-borohydride and aluminum chloride yields 19 which is reduced by hydrogen in the presence of Pd/C to give 20. O-alkylation of 20 by benzyl bromoacetate and base forms 21 which is converted to the acid 22 by debenzylation using hydrogen in the presence of Pd/C.

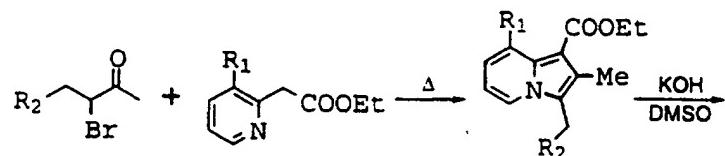
-68-

Scheme 3 - Part 1

26-28	$\text{R}_1$	$\text{R}_2$
a:	Et	Ph
b:	Et	o-Ph-Ph
c:	Et	m-Cl-Ph
d:	Et	m-CF <sub>3</sub> -Ph
e:	Et	1-Naphthyl
f:	cyclo-Pr	o-Ph-Ph

5        Compound 23 (N. Desideri F. Manna, M. L. Stein, G. Bile, W. Filippelli, and E. Marmo, *Eur. J. Med. Chem. Ther.*, 18, 295, (1983)) is O-alkylated using sodium hydride and benzyl chloride to give 24. N-alkylation of 24 by 1-bromo-2-butanone or chloromethylcyclopropyl ketone and subsequent 10 base catalyzed cyclization gives 25 which is acylated by aroyl halide to give 26. Hydrolysis of the ester function of 26 followed by acidification forms an acid which is thermally decarboxylated to give 27. Reduction of the ketone function of 27 by LAH yields indolizines 28.

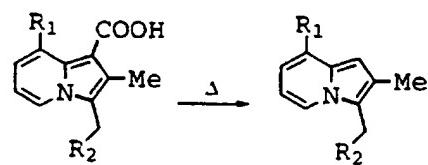
-69-

Scheme 3 - Part 2

29a:  $\text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 b:  $\text{R}_2=\text{cyclo-Hex.}$

24a:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}$   
 b:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OMe}$   
 30a:  $\text{R}_1=\text{H}$

31a:  $\text{R}_1=\text{H}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 b:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 c:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OMe}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 d:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{cyclo-Hex}$

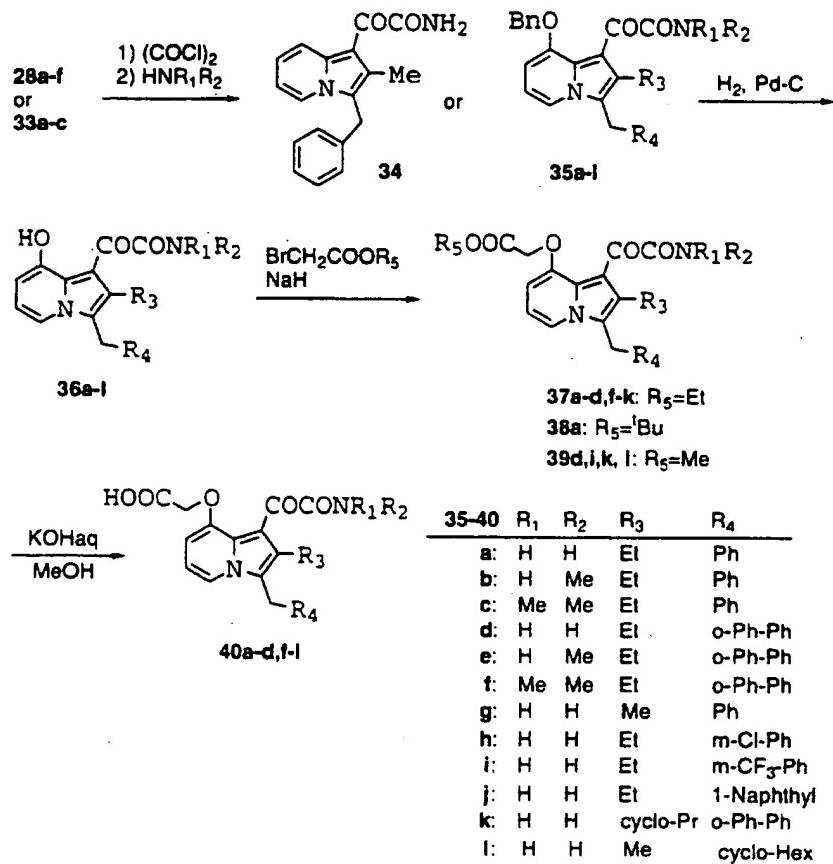


32a:  $\text{R}_1=\text{H}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 b:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 c:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OMe}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 d:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{cyclo-Hex}$

33a:  $\text{R}_1=\text{H}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 b:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{Ph}$   
 c:  $\text{R}_1=\text{OBn}, \text{R}_2=\text{cyclo-Hex}$

5        Heating a mixture of 3-bromo-4-phenyl-butan-2-one or 3-bromo-4-cyclohexyl-butan-2-one and ethyl pyridine-2-acetate, or a substituted derivative, in the presence of base yields indolizine 31. Treatment of 31 with aqueous base in DMSO at elevated temperature followed by acidification gives 32 which  
 10      is thermally decarboxylated to 33.

- 70 -

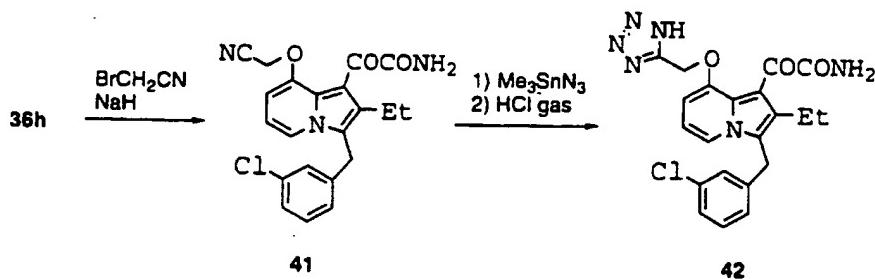
Scheme 4 - Part 1

5

Sequential treatment of 28 or 33 with oxalyl chloride and ammonium hydroxide forms 35 which is debenzylated by hydrogen in the presence of Pd/C to give 36. Indolizines 36 are O-alkylated using sodium hydride and bromoacetic acid esters to form 37, 38, or 39 which are converted to indolizines 40 by hydrolysis with aqueous base followed by acidification.

-71-

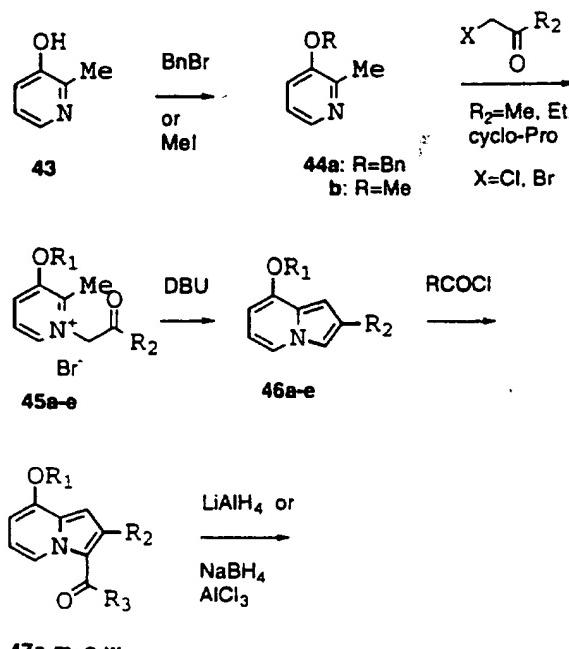
Scheme 4 - Part 2



The O-alkylation of 36h produces nitrile 41 which is converted to 42 on reaction with trialkyltin azide.

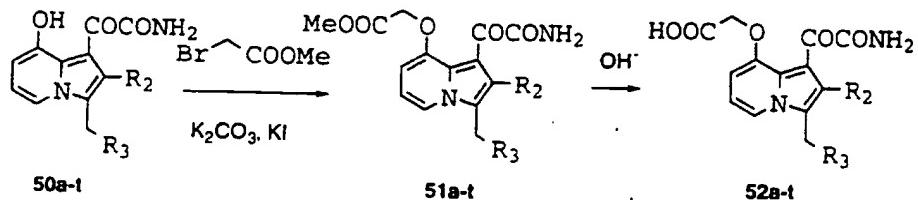
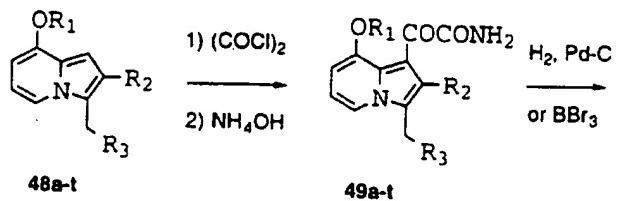
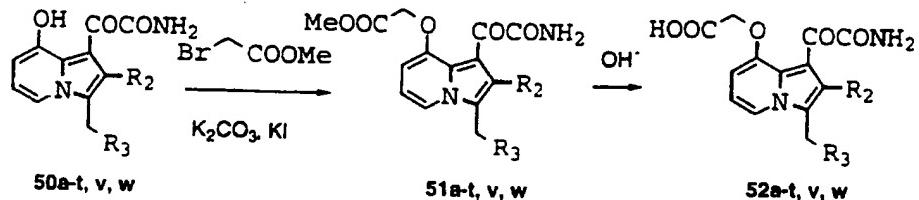
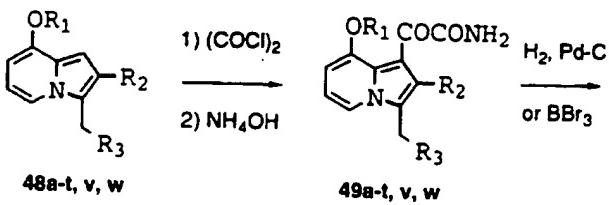
-72-

Scheme 5

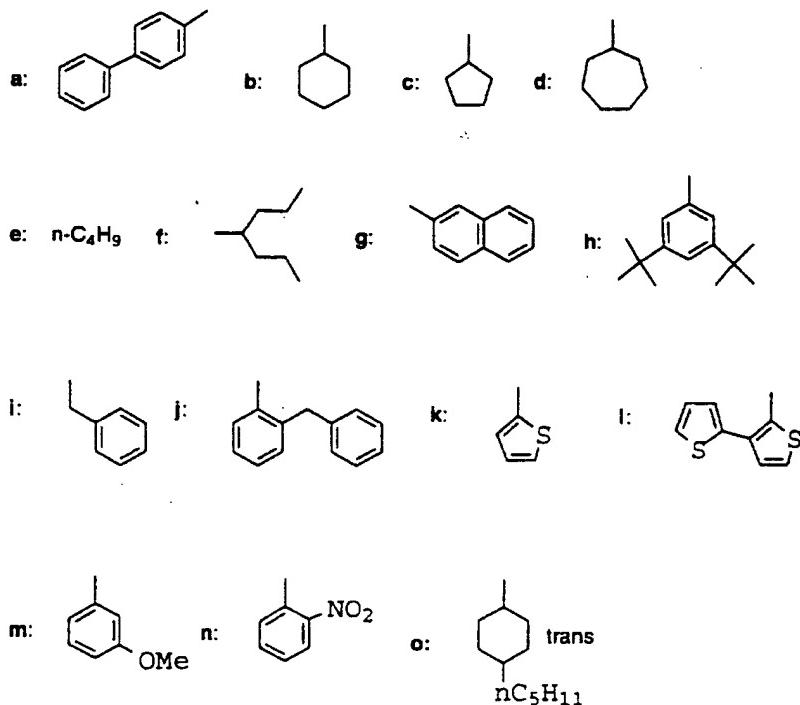


45, 46	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	47-52	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>
a:	Bn	Et	a-o	Bn	Et	a-o (see below)
b:	Me	Et	p	Bn	Me	1-adamantyl
c:	Bn	Me	q	Bn	Me	o-biphenyl
d:	Me	cyclo-Pro	r	Bn	cycloPro	phenyl
e:	Bn	cyclo-Pro	s	Me	Et	p-n-C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> -Ph
			t	Bn	Me	cyclo-Hex
			u	Me	cycloPro	cyclo-Hex
			v	Bn	cycloPro	cyclopentyl
			w	Bn	Me	cyclopentyl

-73-

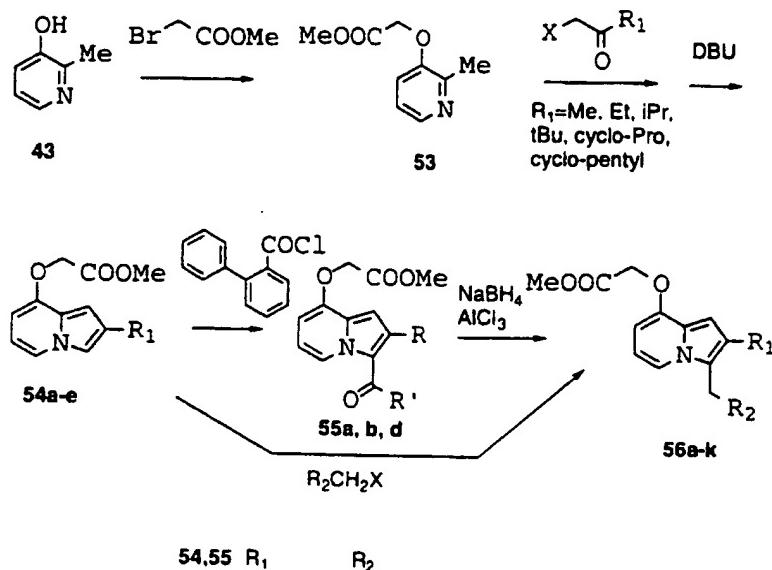


-74-

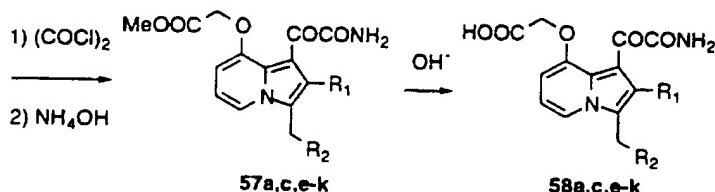
47-52 R<sub>3</sub>=

The hydroxypyridine is O-alkylated to give 44 which is heated with 2-haloketones to produce 45. Treatment of 45 with 5 base causes cyclization to 46 which on heating with acid chlorides yields acylindolizines 47 which are reduced by aluminum hydride to the corresponding alkylindolizines 48. Sequential treatment of 48 with oxalyl chloride and then ammonia gives 49. Cleavage of the ether functionality of 49 10 yields 50. The oxyacetic ester derivatives 51 are formed by O-alkylation of 50 and then hydrolyzed to the oxyacetic acids 52.

-75-

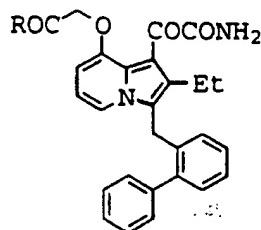
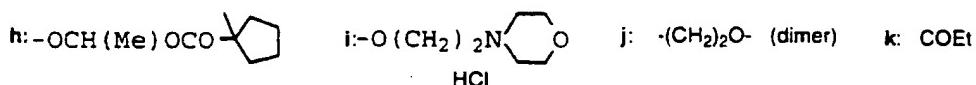
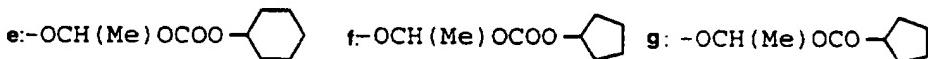
Scheme 6 - Part 154,55 R<sub>1</sub>      R<sub>2</sub>

- |    |             |            |
|----|-------------|------------|
| a: | Me          | o-biphenyl |
| b: | Et          | o-biphenyl |
| c: | iPr         | o-biphenyl |
| d: | cyclo-Pro   | cyclohexyl |
| e: | tBu         | o-biphenyl |
| f: | cyclopentyl | o-biphenyl |



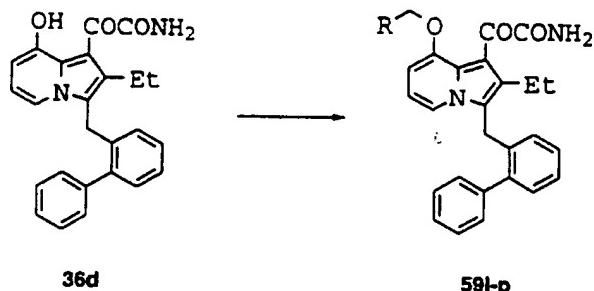
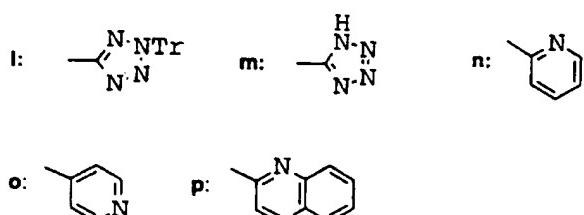
56-58	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>
a	Me	o-biphenyl	f	cyclopentyl o-biphenyl
b	Et	o-biphenyl	g	Et m-biphenyl
c	iPr	o-biphenyl	h	Et cinnamyl
d	cycloPro	o-biphenyl	i	Et phenethyl
e	tBu	o-biphenyl	j	cyclopropyl 1-naphthyl
			k	cyclopropyl cyclohexyl

-76-

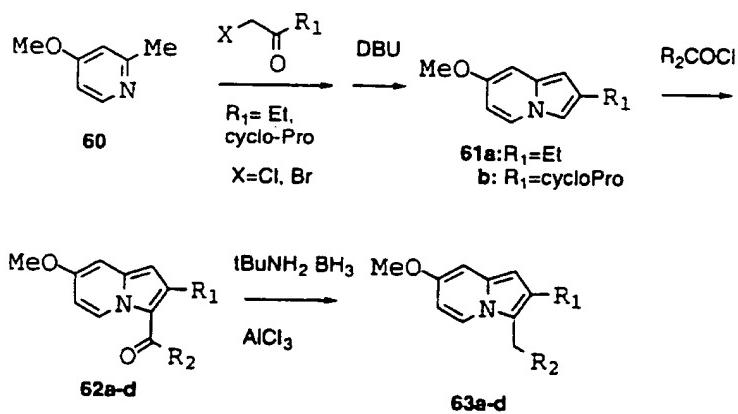
**59a-k****59a-k R=**a: -ONa    b: -OCH(Me)OCOOMe    c: -OCH(Me)OCOO*i*Pr    d: -OCH<sub>2</sub>OCOtBu

Pyridine 43 is O-alkylated to produce 53. Heating 53 with 2-haloketones gives intermediate N-alkylated pyridinium 5 compounds which are cyclized to 54 on treatment with base. Heating 54 with acyl chlorides gives the acylindolizines 55 which are reduced to the alkylindolizines 56 by sodium borohydride-aluminum chloride. Alternatively, 56 are produced by C-alkylation of 54 using alkyl halides. Sequential treatment of 56 with oxalyl chloride and then ammonia gives 57 which are hydrolyzed to produce 58. Compound 58b is converted to its sodium salt 59a which yields 59b-k on reaction with the appropriate alkyl halide.

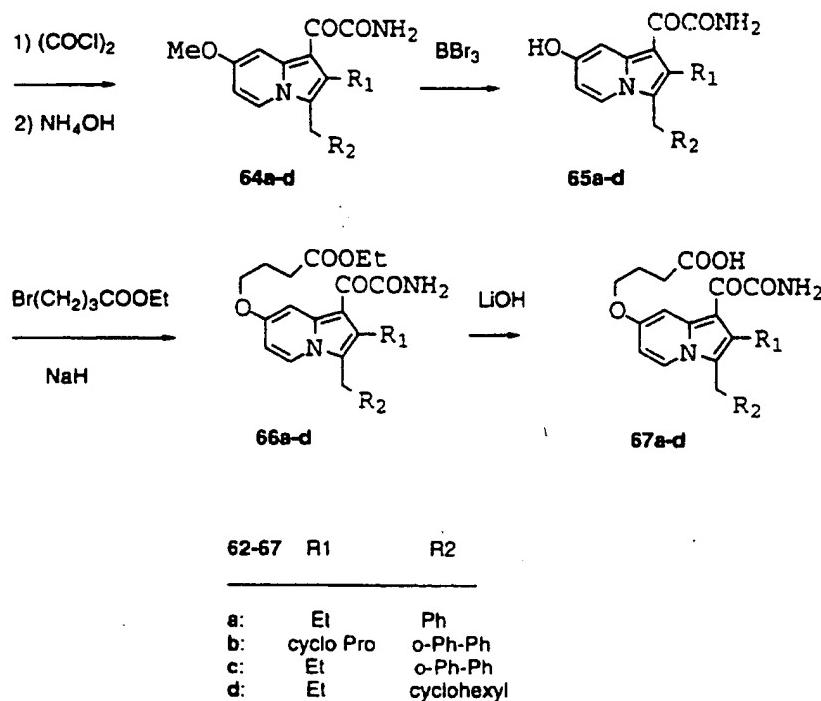
- 77 -

Scheme 6 - Part 2**59l-p      R=**

5      Compound 36b is O-alkylated to give 59l-p.

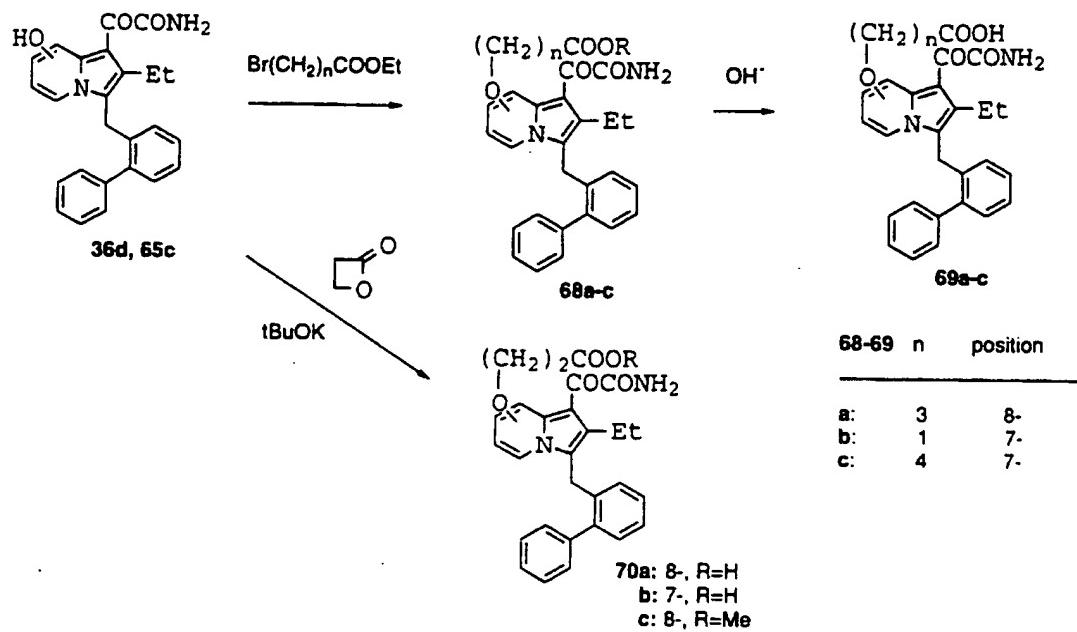
Scheme 7

-78-



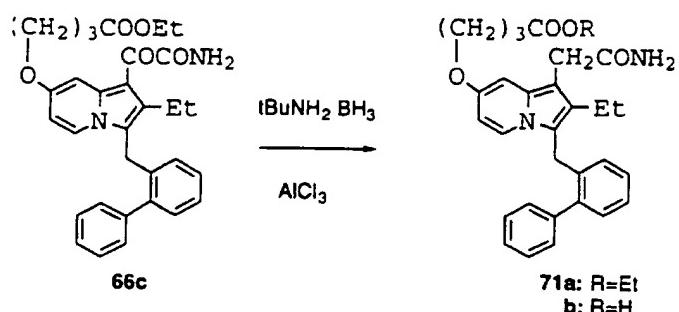
Pyridine 60 is N-alkylated by 2-haloketones to produce intermediate pyridinium compounds which are cyclized by base 5 to give 61. Reaction of 61 with acyl chlorides produces 62 which are reduced to 63 by tert butylamine-borane and aluminum chloride. Sequential treatment of 63 with oxalyl chloride and then ammonia yields 64 which are O-demethylated by  $BBr_3$  to give 65. The sodium salt of 65 is reacted with 10 ethyl 4-bromobutyrate to give 66 which is hydrolyzed to the acid 67.

- 79 -

Scheme 8

5 Compounds 36d and 65c are O-alkylated by omega-bromocarboxylic esters to give 68 which are hydrolyzed to the acids 69. Compounds 36d and 65c produce 70 on treatment with propiolactone and base.

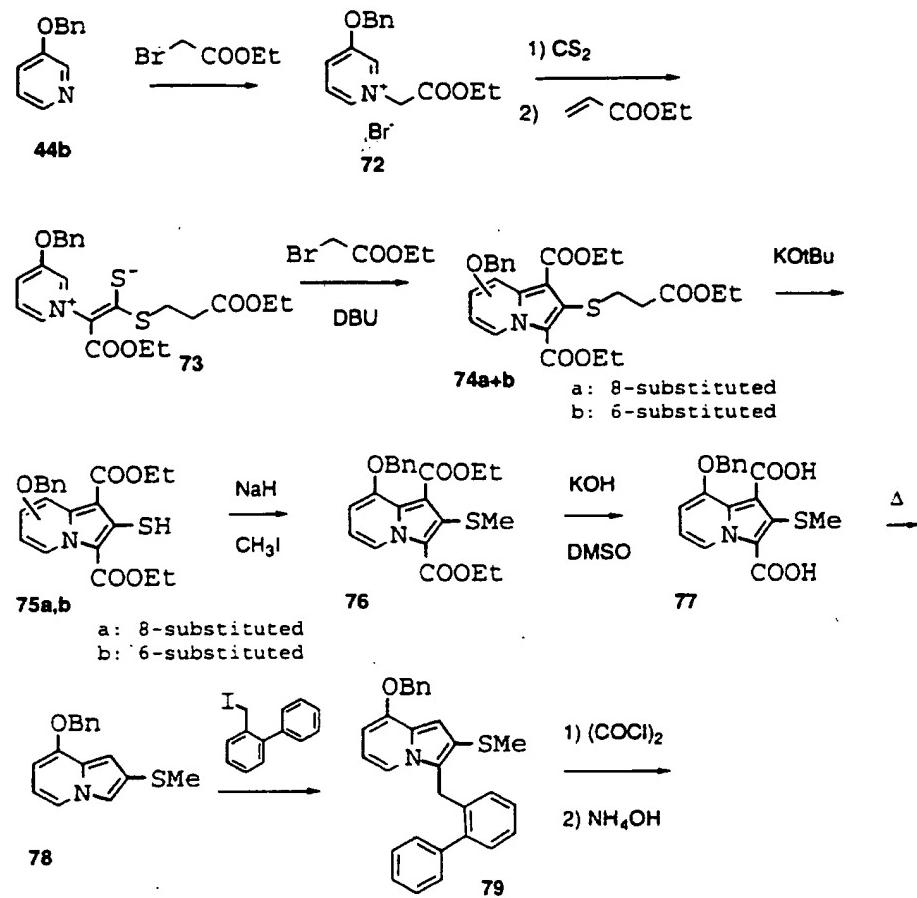
10

Scheme 9

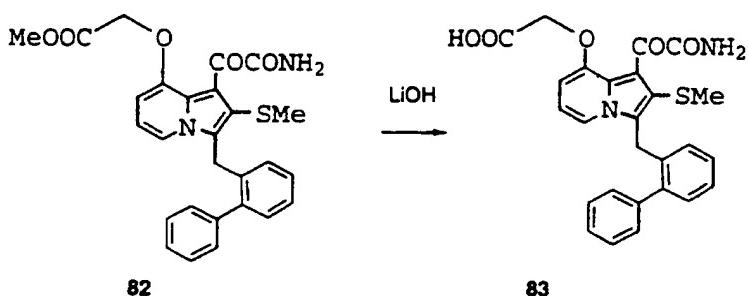
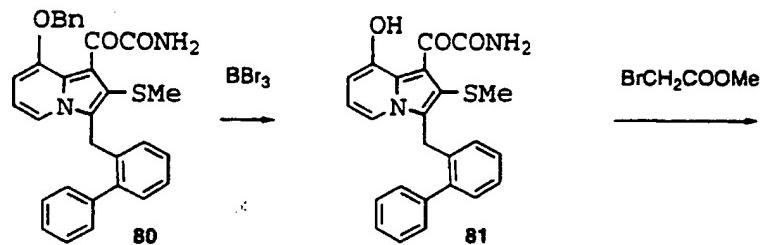
Compounds 66 are reduced to 71 by tert-butylamine-borane  
15 and aluminum chloride.

- 80 -

Scheme 10



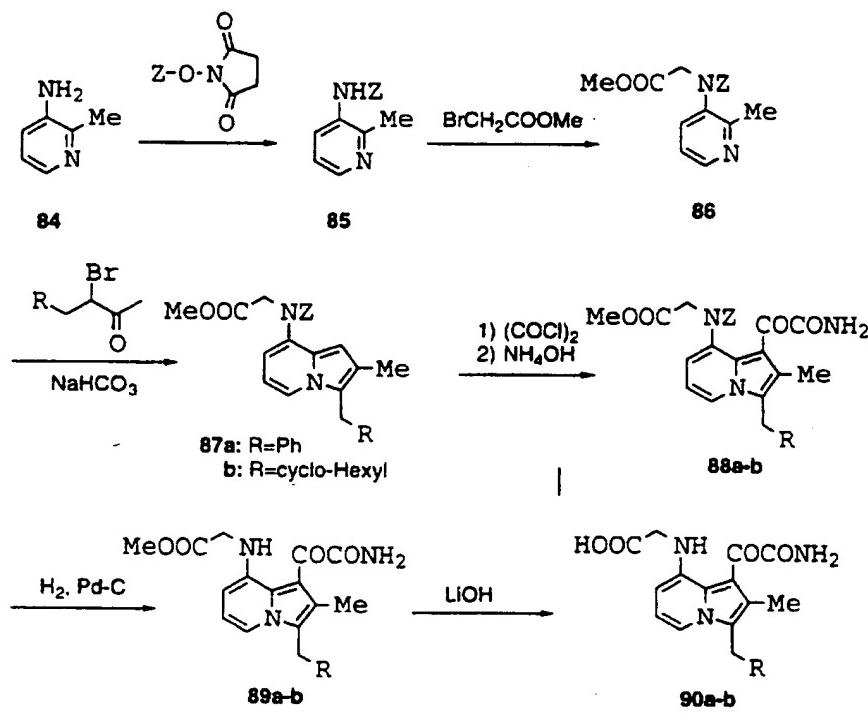
-81-



Pyridine 4b reacts with ethyl bromoacetate to produce 72 which is treated with CS<sub>2</sub> and base and then with ethyl acrylate to form 73. Reaction of 73 with base and ethyl bromoacetate yields a mixture of regioisomers 74a+b, 6- and 8-benzyloxy compounds. Base treatment of 74a+b eliminates ethyl acrylate to form 75 which is separated from the isomer of 6-benzyloxy derivative and S-alkylated to give 76.

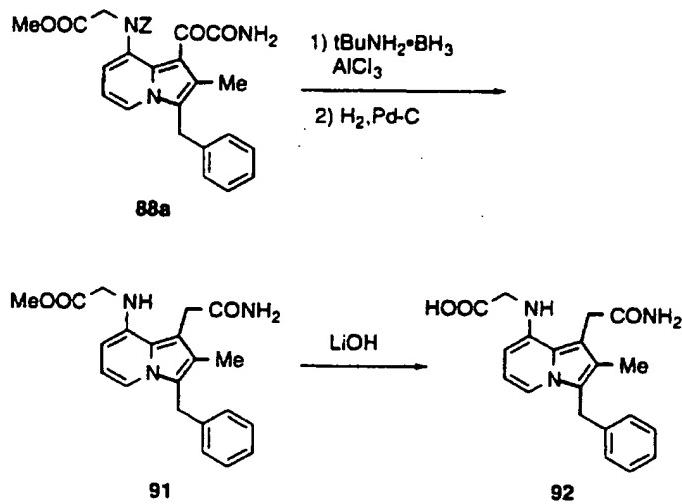
Hydrolysis of 76 forms 77 which is thermally decarboxylated to yield 78. Compound 78 is C-alkylated to form 79 which on sequential treatment with oxalyl chloride and then ammonia forms 80. Ether cleavage of 80 gives 81 whose sodium salt is alkylated by methyl bromoacetate to form 82 which are hydrolyzed to acids 83.

-82-

Scheme 11 - Part 1

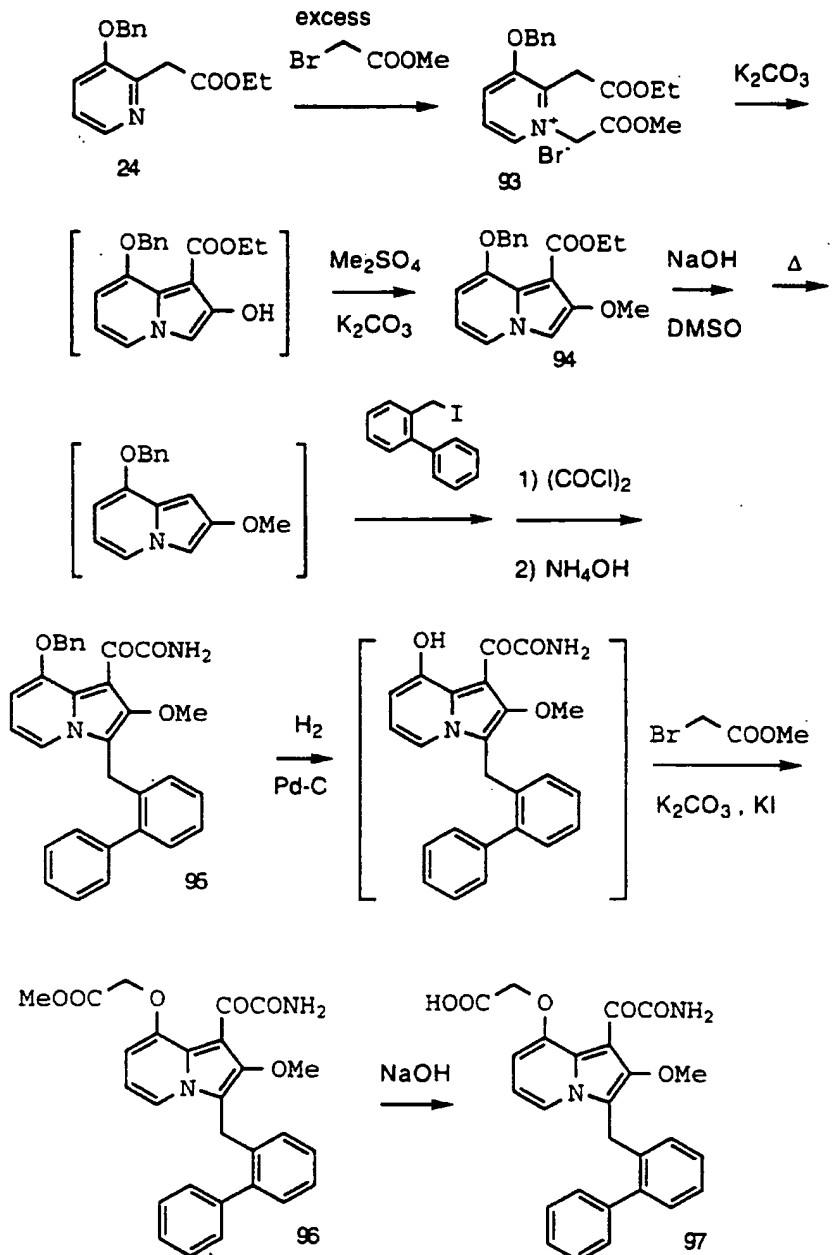
5       Aminopicoline 84 is converted to its N-CBZ derivative 85 whose anion is alkylated by methyl bromoacetate to produce 86. Reaction of 86 with methyl alpha-bromoalkyl ketones in the presence of base yields 87. Sequential treatment of 87 with oxalyl chloride and then ammonia gives 88 which is 10 converted to 89 by hydrogenolysis of the N-CBZ function. Hydrolysis of 89 yields acids 90.

-83-

Scheme 11 - Part 2

5. Compounds **88** are reduced by tert-butylamine-borane and aluminum chloride to **91** which are hydrolyzed to acids **92**.

- 84 -

Scheme 12

5

Pyridine 24 is N-alkylated by methyl bromoacetate, cyclized with base, and o-methylated using dimethylsulfate to give 94. Hydrolysis of the ester function of 94 followed by

-85-

thermal decarboxylation yields 2-methoxy-8-benzyloxyindolizine which is C-alkylated at position 3 and then reacted sequentially with oxalyl chloride and ammonia to produce 95. Hydrogenolysis of the 8-benzyloxy group followed by O-alkylation gives 96 which is hydrolyzed to 97.

EXAMPLES

Reference numbers in the following Examples refer to  
10 compounds shown in the preceding Schemes.

Example 1

Part A: Preparation of 5-Methoxy-2-phenacyl-pyridine 2

15 A solution of n-butyllithium in hexane (1.6 M, 11.4 ml, 18.2 m mol) was added dropwise to a solution of diisopropylamine (1.81 g, 17.9 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 ml) at -60--70 °C under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred for 10 min. A solution of 5-methoxy-2-methylpyridine (1, L. Marion and W.F.Cockburn, J. Am. Chem. Soc., 71, 3402 (1949)) (2.20 g, 17.9 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (4 ml) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 10 min. A solution of benzonitrile (1.84 g, 17.9 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 ml) was added dropwise at -70 °C. The mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 1 hour and at room temperature for 2 hours and poured to ice-cold aqueous ammonium chloride. The organic phase was separated and the aqueous phase was extracted with ether. The combined organic phases were extracted with dilute hydrochloric acid. The extracts were washed with ether, basified with 10% aqueous sodium hydroxide and extracted with ether. The extracts were washed with water, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (3:2) and crystallized from benzene:hexane to give 2.32 g (57.0% yield) of the titled compound.

-86-

The NMR showed to be a mixture of the keto and the enol tautomers. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1685, 1630  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  3.84-3.88 (3H, m), 4.45 (2H, m), 7.0-7.3 (3H, m), 7.82 (1H, m), 8.07 (2H, m), 8.27 (1H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for 5  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_2$ : C, 73.99; H, 5.77; N, 6.16. Found: C, 74.08; H, 5.85; N, 6.20.

Part B: Preparation of 1-Benzoyl-2-ethyl-6-methoxyindolizine 3

10 A mixture of the pyridine derivative (2, 2.146 g, 9.44 m mol), 1-bromo-2-butanone (2.14 g, 14.2 m mol) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (1.60 g, 19 m mol) in acetone (50 ml) was heated under reflux for 20 hours. The insoluble materials were removed off by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated 15 under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from benzene:hexane to give 2.39 g (90.7% yield) of the titled compound, mp, 138-139 °C.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1600, 1592, 1505  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.19 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.72 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 20 6.69 (1H, dd,  $J=2.0$ , 9.8 Hz), 7.10 (1H, s), 7.26 (1H, d,  $J=9.6$  Hz), 7.35-7.55 (4H, m), 7.67 (2H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{14}\text{NO}_2$ : C, 77.40; H, 6.13; N, 5.01. Found: C, 77.53; H, 6.27; N, 5.06.

25 Part C: Preparation of 1-Benzyl-2-ethyl-6-methoxyindolizine 4

30 The benzoyl derivative (3, 1.37 g, 4.90 m mol) was added in small portions to a slurry of lithiumaluminumhydride (1.03 g, 27.1 m mol) in ether (100 ml) with cooling in ice under nitrogen. The mixture was then heated under reflux for 4.5 hours. After cooling, the mixture was poured into ice-cold 5% aqueous sodium hydroxide and extracted with ether. The solvent was removed at reduced pressure to give 1.23 g (94.5% 35 yield). The oily residue was used to the next preparation without further purification owing to the instability.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (film) 1642, 1550, 1218  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.18 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 2.57 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.75 (3H, s), 4.06 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, dd, J=9.6, 2.2 Hz), 7.0-7.3 (7H, m), 7.39 (1H, d, J=2.2 Hz).

5

Part D: Preparation of Ethyl (1-benzyl-2-ethyl-6-methoxyindolin-3-yl)glyoxylate 5

A solution of ethyl oxalylchloride (0.67 g, 4.91 m mol) in benzene (10 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the 10 indolizine compound (4, 1.23 g, 4.64 m mol) in benzene (20 ml) with cooling in ice under nitrogen. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, washed with aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate and then water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the 15 residue was chromatographed on alumina (grade II) eluting with hexane:AcOEt (10:1) to give 1.66 g (98.5% yield) of the titled compound.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (film) 1732, 1582, 1530, 1224  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.12 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 1.42 (3H, t, J=7.3 Hz), 2.71 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, s), 4.42 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 7.00 (1H, dd, J=1.8, 9.4 Hz), 7.05-7.3 (6H, m), 9.77 (1H, d, J=1.8 Hz).

25 Part E: Preparation of Lithium (1-benzyl-2-ethyl-6-methoxyindolin-3-yl)glyoxylate 6 and the carboxylic acid 7

A solution of LiOH  $1\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (1.0 g) in water (10 ml) was added to a solution of the ester (1.46 g) in methanol (10 ml). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The solid was collected by filtration washed with small 30 amount of water and with ether and dried to give the salt (670 mg), mp >300 °C. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1608, 1579, 1530, 1372  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . The filtrate was acidified to pH 4 with dilute hydrochloric acid and extracted with ether. The extracts were washed with water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the 35 solvent at reduced pressure, the titled carboxylic acid was obtained and unstable on standing at room temperature.

-88-

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.16 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.89 (2H, q, J=7.4 Hz), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.07 (2H, s), 7.0-7.3 (7H, m), 9.72 (1H, d, J=1.6 Hz).

5   Part F: Preparation of (1-Benzyl-2-ethyl-6-methoxyindolizin-3-yl)glyoxylamide 8

10   1) A solution of ethyl chlorocarbonate (220 mg, 2.03 m mol) in acetone (3 ml) was added dropwise to a mixture of the salt (7, 569 mg, 1.66 m mol) in water (2 ml) and acetone (5 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min and poured to 28% ammonium hydroxide. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours and extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (1:1) to give the titled compound, mp 159-160 °C.

15   IR V<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 3342, 3166, 1664, 1571 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

20   2) A solution of the indolizine compound (4, 1.288 g, 4.85 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (25 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (3.18 g, 25 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour and added dropwise to 28% ammonium hydroxide (50 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was 25 stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Water was added. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate:benzene to give 1.27 g (73.6% yield) of 30 the titled compound.

Part G: Preparation of (1-Benzyl-2-ethyl-6-hydroxyindolizin-3-yl)glyoxylamide 9

35   A solution of borontribromide (976 mg, 3.89 m mol) in dichloromethane (5 ml) was added to a solution of the methoxy compound (8, 437 mg, 1.30 m mol) in dichloromethane (50 ml)

at -20 °C. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours and poured to ice-water. A small amount of methanol was added. The organic phase was separated and washed with water. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, The residue was crystallized from dichloromethane, mp, 219-220 °C (dec.).  
IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3388, 3261, 3193, 1678, 1530  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Part H: Preparation of (1-Benzyl-6-(3-carbethoxypopyloxy)-2-ethylindolin-3-yl)glyoxylamide 10

10 60% Sodium hydride (52 mg, 1.32 m mol) was added to a solution of the alcohol (9, 213 mg, 0.661 m mol) and ethyl 4-bromo-2-butyrate (283 mg, 1.45 m mol) in dimethylformamide (5 ml) with cooling in ice under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8.5 hours, poured to ice-water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:ethyl acetate (1:2) and recrystallized from benzene to give 162 mg (56.2% yield) of  
20 the titled compound, mp, 143-144 °C.

Part I: Preparation of (1-Benzyl-6-(3-carboxypropoxy)-2-ethylindolin-3-yl)glyoxylamide 11

25 A mixture of the ester (10, 125 mg, 0.286 m mol) in methanol (1.2 ml) and 10% aqueous lithium hydroxide (1.2 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid and extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue  
30 was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with chloroform:methanol (10:1) and recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give 58.4 mg (49.9% yield) of the titled compound, mp, 176-178 °C.

Example 2Part A: Preparation of Ethyl 3-(3-benzyloxy-2-pyridinyl)propanoate 13

5       A mixture of (E)-ethyl 3-(3-benzyloxy-2-pyridinyl)propenoate (12, N. Desideri, A. Galli, I. Sestili, and M. L. Stein, Arch. Pharm. (Weinheim) 325, 29 (1992)) (12.2 g, 43.0 m mol) and 10% palladium-coal (0.5 g) in ethyl acetate (250 ml) was stirred in hydrogen atmosphere until no  
10 more starting material remained. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (2:1) and (1:2). The fraction of the larger R<sub>f</sub> value (6.0 g (48.8% yield)) was the titled compound.

15

Part B: Preparation of 3-(3-Hydroxy-2-pyridinyl)propanamide

15       A solution of the ester (14, 7.47 g) in 28% ammonium hydroxide (50 ml) was allowed to stand at room temperature overnight and the volatile materials were removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 6.49 g (94.7% yield) of the titled compound, mp, 130-134 °C.

25

Part C: Preparation of 3-(3-Benzylxy-2-pyridinyl)propanamide 16

30       A mixture of the hydroxy compound (15, 4.85 g, 29.2 m mol), benzyl chloride (4.06 g, 32.1 m mol) and potassium carbonate (8.07 g, 58.4 m mol) in methylethylketone (100 ml) was heated under reflux for 9 hours. The insoluble materials were removed by filtration. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in  
35 dichloromethane. The solution was washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent, the residue was

crystallized from benzene to give 5.10 g (68.2% yield) of the titled compound, mp, 126-127 °C.

5   Part D-1: Preparation of

Ethyl 2-(8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)acetate 17a

A mixture of the ester (13, 1.0 g, 3.51 m mol), 1-bromo-2-butanone (0.79 g, 5.23 m mol) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (0.70 g, 8.23 m mol) in methylethylketone (10 ml) was heated under reflux for 20 hours. The solid was filtered off. After removing the solvent of the filtrate at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (5:1) to give 233 mg (23.9% yield) of the titled compound as an oil.

15   <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.15 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.61 (2H, q, J=7.6 Hz), 3.97 (2H, s), 4.04 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 5.11 (2H, s), 5.93 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.23 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 7.08 (1H, s), 7.3-7.5 (6H, m).

20   Part D-2: Preparation of

2-(8-Benzylxy-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)acetamide 17b and 2-(2-Ethyl-3-(2-oxobutyloxy)-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 17c

A mixture of the pyridine derivative (16, 4.00 g, 15.6 m mol), 1-bromo-2-butanone (3.53 g, 23.4 m mol) and sodium hydrogencarbonate (6.55 g, 78 m mol) in methylethylketone (30 ml) was heated under reflux for 60 hours. The solid was filtered off. The volatile materials were removed by distillation under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:ethyl acetate (1:2) and with ethyl acetate. The first fraction was crystallized from benzene:hexane to give 2.32 g (48.2% yield) of the titled compound 17b and , mp, 117-119 °C.

The second fraction was crystallized from AcOEt:hexane to give 0.208 g (4.6% yield) of the titled compound 17c and , mp, 156-157 °C.

-92-

Part D-3: Preparation of

2-(8-Benzylxy-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)acetamide 17d

5       Chloroacetylcyclopropane was treated by the procedure described above and crystallized from benzene:hexane (30.8% yield), mp, 128-131 °C.

10      Part E: General Procedure for Preparation of 3-(Substituted benzoyl)indolizine 18

The indolizine derivative (17, 1 eq) and substituted benzoylchloride (1.5 eq) in benzene was heated under reflux for 4 hours and washed with aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate 15 and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was purified by recrystallization or column chromatography.

Other Preparations:

20      Ethyl 2-(8-benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)-indolin-1-yl)acetate 18a. This was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (5:1). 73.2% Yield. Amorphous solid.

25      2-(8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 18b. This compound was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (1:2). 71.3% Yield. Amorphous solid.

30      2-(8-Benzylxy-3-(m-chlorobenzoyl)-2-ethyl-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 18c. Mp, 239-240 °C (dec.) (Benzene). 96.2% Yield.

35      2-(3-(m-Chlorobenzoyl)-2-ethyl-8-(2-oxobutyloxy)-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 18d Mp, 191-192 °C (AcOEt-benzene). 68.4% Yield.

-93-

2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 18e. This compound was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (1:2). 56.6% Yield. Amorphous solid.

5

Part F: General Procedure for Preparation of  
3-(Substituted benzyl)indolizine 19

Boron-t-butylamine complex (6 eq) was added in small  
10 portions to a mixture of pulverized aluminumchloride (3 eq)  
in dichloromethane with cooling in ice. After stirring for 10  
min, the mixture became clean. A solution of the ketone (18,  
1 eq) in dichloromethane was added dropwise to the solution.  
The reddish orange-coloured solution was stirred for 5 hours.  
15 Dilute hydrochloric acid was added dropwise. The organic  
phase was separated, washed with aqueous sodium  
hydrogencarbonate and water successively and dried over  
Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the  
residue was purified by chromatography or recrystallization.

20 Other Preparations:

2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizin-3-yl)ethanol 19a

This was purified by silica gel column chromatography  
eluting with hexane:AcOEt (1:1). Viscous oil. 45.1% Yield.

25 <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.09 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 2.61 (2H, q,  
J=7.5 Hz), 3.16 (2H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 3.73 (2H, q, J=6.3 Hz),  
4.10 (2H, s), 5.11 (2H, s), 5.94 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.16 (1H,  
t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.66 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.91 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz),  
7.1-7.6 (13H, m).

30

2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19b. Mp, 134-136 °C (benzene-hexane). 59.7% Yield.

-94-

2-(3-(m-Chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-(2-hydroxybutyloxy)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19c. Mp, 131 °C (benzene-hexane). 73.0% Yield.

5 2-(8-Benzyl-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19d. Mp, 167-168 °C (benzene-hexane). 69.7% Yield.

10 2-(8-Benzyl-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19e. Mp, 208-210 °C (benzene). 37.9% Yield.

2-(3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19f. Mp, 174-176 °C (ether-hexane). 77.3% Yield.

15 2-(3-Naphthyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)acetamide 19g. Mp, 166-169 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane). 43.5% Yield.

20 Part I: General Procedure for Preparation of 8-Hydroxy-indolizine compounds 20

A mixture of the 8-benzyloxy-indolizine derivative (19) and 10% palladium-coal in ethyl acetate was stirred in hydrogen for 9 hours to 3 days.

25 Other Preparations:

2-(3-Benzyl-8-hydroxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)acetamide 20v. Mp, 138-141 °C (ether-hexane). 45% Yield.

30 2-(3-Naphthyl-8-hydroxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)acetamide 20w. Mp, 138-142 °C (ether-hexane-AcOEt). 32% Yield.

2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 20x. 59.6% Yield.

35 2-(3-(m-Chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-hydroxy-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 20y. 58.3% Yield.

-95-

2-(2-Cyclopropyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 20z. 55.8% Yield.

Part H: General Procedure for Preparation of Indolizine-8-

5 oxyacetate compounds 21

60% Sodium hydride (1.5 eq) was added in small portions to a mixture of the 8-hydroxyindolizine compound (20, 1.0 eq) and benzyl, ethyl or methyl bromoacetate (3.0 eq) in dimethylformamide. The mixture was stirred at room 10 temperature for 4-10 hours. Dilute hydrochloric acid was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was purified by chromatography.

15

Other Preparations:

Methyl (3-Benzyl-1-carbamoylmethyl-2-ethylindolin-8-yloxy)acetate 21v

Mp, 159-163 °C (ether-hexane). 42.2% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> 20 (nujol) 3402, 3166, 1731, 1678, 1649 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.17 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 2.79 (2H, q, J=7.6 Hz), 3.83 (3H, s), 3.99 (2H, s), 4.23 (2H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 5.35 (1H, br.s), 5.82 (1H, d, J=7.0 Hz), 6.20 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.44 (1H, br.s), 7.00-7.29 (6H, m). Analyses: Calcd. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub> 25 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.80; H, 6.40; N, 7.29. Found: C, 68.67; H, 6.40; N, 7.18.

Methyl (3-Naphthyl-1-carbamoylmethyl-2-ethylindolin-8-yloxy)acetate 21w. Foam. 38% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3498, 30 3384, 1754, 1671, 1596 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

2-(8-(Benzylloxycarbonylmethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)acetamide 21x. 45.4% Yield.

-96-

2-(8-(Benzylloxycarbonylmethoxy)-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)acetamide 21y. Mp, 157-158 °C (benzene). 38.8% Yield.

5 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolin-1-yl)acetamide 21z. 43.8% Yield.

10 Part I: Preparation of Indolizine-8-oxyacetic acid compounds 22

A mixture of the benzyl ester (21) and 10% palladium-coal in ethyl acetate was stirred in hydrogen for 3 hours. The catalyst was filtered and washed well with ethyl acetate. The solvent of the filtrate was removed at reduced pressure and 15 the residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate.

Other Preparations:

2-(3-Benzyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)acetamide 22v  
20 Mp, 213-218 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane). 79% Yield.  
IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3418, 1735, 1718, 1638, 1618  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}=7:1$ )  $\delta$  1.16 (3H, t,  $J=7.7$  Hz), 2.77 (2H, q,  $J=7.7$  Hz), 3.99 (2H, s), 4.24 (2H, s), 4.69 (2H, s), 5.89 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 6.23 (1H, t,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 7.01-7.25 (6H, m).  
25 Analyses: Calcd. for  $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 68.17; H, 6.10; N, 7.57. Found: C, 67.99; H, 6.07; N, 7.65.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthyl)indolin-1-yl)acetamide 22w. Mp, 129-133 °C (hexane-AcOEt). 65% Yield.  
30

Preparation of 2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)acetamide 22x. Mp, 164-165 °C (AcOEt). 61.1% Yield.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)acetamide 22y. Mp, 216-219 °C (dec.) (AcOEt). 57.5% Yield.

-97-

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)-indolizin-1-yl)acetamide 22z. 65.5% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.51 (2H, m), 0.89 (2H, m), 1.76 (1H, m), 4.06 (2H, s), 4.22 (2H, s), 4.63 (2H, s), 5.82 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 6.16 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 6.56 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 6.88 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 7.11 (1H, dt,  $J=7.5$ , 1.5 Hz), 7.26 (2H, m), 7.3-7.5 (5H, m).

Example 3

10 Part A: Preparation of Ethyl 3-hydroxy-2-pyridineacetate 24

60% Sodium hydride (2.69 g, 66.2 m mol) was added in small portions to a solution of ethyl 3-hydroxy-2-pyridineacetate (23, 12.0 g, 66.2 m mol) (N. Desideri, F. Manna, M. L. Stein, G. Bile, W. Filippelli, and E. Marmo.

15 Eur. J. Med. Chem. Chim. Ther., 18, 295 (1983)) in dimethylformamide (220 ml) at 0 °C. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 50 min. Benzyl chloride (8.4 ml, 72.8 m mol) was added dropwise to the mixture, which was stirred overnight. Ethyl acetate was added. The mixture was washed with 5%

20 aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate and water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with AcOEt:toluene (1:19 to 1:1) to give 16.17 g (90.0% yield) of the titled compound as an oil.

25 IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (film) 1736, 1446, 1278  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.21 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 3.93 (2H, s), 4.14 (2H, q,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 5.10 (2H, s), 7.13-7.22 (2H, m), 7.32-7.43 (5H, m), 8.16 (1H, dd,  $J=4.0$ , 3.0 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}_3$ : C, 70.83; H, 6.32; N, 5.16. Found: C, 70.65; H, 6.37; N, 5.20.

30

Part B: Preparation of Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)carboxylate 25a

A mixture of pyridine derivative (24, 15.15 g, 55.8 m mol) sodium hydrogencarbonate (23.45 g, 279 m mol) and 1-bromo-2-butanone (11.4 ml, 113 m mol) in methylethylketone (250 ml) was heated under reflux for 24 hour, washed with

-98-

water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with  $\text{AcOEt}:\text{hexane}$  (1:19 to 1:9) to give 16.66 g, (92.0% yield) of the titled compound as an oil.

5       IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (film) 1690, 1227, 1092  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.15 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 1.26 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.82 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 4.11 (2H, q,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 5.16 (2H, s), 6.22 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$  Hz), 6.44 (1H, t,  $J=7.1$  Hz), 7.07 (1H, s), 7.27-7.57 (6H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_3 \cdot 0.1\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 73.87; H, 6.57; N, 4.31. Found: C, 73.75; H, 6.66; N, 4.30.

Preparation of

Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate  
25b. 78% Yield.

15

Part C: General Procedure for Preparation of Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(substituted benzoyl)indolin-1-yl)carboxylate 26

20       A mixture of the indolizine (25, 1 eq), substituted benzoyl chloride (2.0 eq) and triethylamine (5.0 eq) was heated at 90 °C (bath temp.) for 2-8 hours. Ethyl acetate was added. The mixture was washed with dilute hydrochloric acid and water and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . After removing the solvent  
25 at reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with  $\text{AcOEt}:\text{hexane}$  (1:2) and recrystallized.

Other Preparations:

30       Ethyl (3-benzoyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate 26a

Mp, 124-125 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 79 % Yield.

Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolin-1-yl)carboxylate 26b. Mp, 110-112 °C (ether-hexane). 46.0%

35       Yield.

-99-

Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-3-(m-chlorobenzoyl)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)carboxylate 26c. Mp, 115.0-116.5 °C (ether-hexane). 92% Yield.

5 Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)indolizin-1-yl)carboxylate 26d. Mp, 129.0-129.5 °C (ether-hexane). 82% Yield.

10 Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthoyl)indolizin-1-yl)carboxylate 26e. Mp, 169-170 °C (benzene-hexane). 59.3% Yield.

15 Ethyl (8-benzyloxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizin-1-yl)carboxylate 26f. Mp, 143-145 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 52% Yield.

Part D: General Procedure for preparation of (8-Benzyl-2-ethyl-3-(substituted benzoyl)indolizin-1-yl)carboxylic acid and 8-Benzyl-2-ethyl-3-(substituted benzoyl)indolizine 27

To a solution of the ester (26, 1.0 m mol) in dimethylsulfoxide (10 ml), 50% aqueous potassium hydroxide (3 ml) was added. The mixture was heated at 140 °C for 2-24 hours. After cooling, the mixture was acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent under reduced pressure, The residue was purified by recrystallization to give the carboxylic acid. The acid in toluene was heated under reflux for 1 hour and the solvent was removed by distillation at reduced pressure. The residue was purified by recrystallization to give 27.

Other Preparations:

3-Benzoyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethyl-indolizine 27a

35 Mp, 92-93 °C (AcOEt-hexane). IR ν<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 2965, 1593, 1571, 1552, 1326, 1275, 1045 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05

-100-

(3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 2.42 (2H, q, J=7.4 Hz), 5.21 (2H, s), 6.47 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.62-6.71 (2H, m), 7.25-7.52 (8H, m), 7.61-7.65 (2H, m), 9.23 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz). [EIMS] m/z 355 [M<sup>+</sup>]. Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>24</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>2</sub> 0.1H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 80.69; H, 5.98; N, 3.92. Found: C, 80.67; H, 5.98; N, 3.92.

8-Benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 27b

Quantitative yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 1735, 1597, 742 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

10 8-Benzyl oxy-3-(m-chlorobenzoyl)-2-ethyl-indolizine 27c  
Mp, 95.5-96.5 °C (ether-hexane). 87% Yield.

8-Benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzoyl)indolizine 27d. Mp, 97-98 °C (ether-hexane). 84% Yield.

15 8-Benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthoyl)indolizine 27e. 66.1% Yield.

8-Benzyl oxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 27f  
82% Yield.

20 Part E: General Procedure for Preparation of  
8-Benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-3-(substituted benzyl)indolizine 28  
Compound 27 was treated by the procedure described for  
the preparation of 4.

25 Other Preparations:

3-Benzyl-8-benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-indolizine 28a. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.28 (3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 2.71 (2H, q, J=7.4 Hz), 4.22 (2H, s), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.99 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.24 (1H, dd, J=7.4, 7.4 Hz), 6.61 (1H, s), 7.02-7.51 (11H, m).

30 8-Benzyl oxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 28b  
Quantitative yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 1525, 1259 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

8-Benzyl oxy-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-indolizine 28c.  
Quantitative yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 1551, 1258 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

-101-

8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indolizine  
28d. Mp, 73-75 °C (hexane). Quantitative yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$   
(nujol) 1332, 1163, 1114  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

5 (8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizin-1-  
yl)carboxylate 28e. Mp, 119-120 °C (hexane). 89.0% Yield.

8-Benzylxyloxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 28f  
91% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 1527, 1448, 1259  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

10

Part F: General Procedure for Preparation of Ethyl (3-  
benzyl-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate 31a, Ethyl (3-  
benzyl-8-benzylxyloxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate 31b and  
15 Ethyl (3-benzyl-8-methoxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate  
31c.

A mixture of 3-bromo-4-phenyl-butan-2-one (29, F.  
Bellesia, F. Ghelfi, K. Grandi and M. Ugo, J. Chem. Res. (S),  
S 428 (1986)) (1.3 eq) and ethyl pyridine-2-acetate or its 3-  
20 substituted compounds (1.0 eq) and sodium hydrogencarbonate  
(10 eq) were heated at 165 °C for 1 to 4 hours and  
chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexane:AcOEt (5-  
2:1).

25 Other Preparations:

Ethyl (3-benzyl-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate 31a  
Mp, 75 °C (hexane). 37.1% Yield.

Ethyl (3-benzyl-8-benzylxyloxy-2-methylindolin-1-  
yl)carboxylate 31b. Mp, 117-118 °C. (hexane). 47.4% Yield.

30

Ethyl (3-benzyl-8-methoxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylate  
31c. Mp, 105 °C. (hexane). 23.4% Yield.

35 Part G: General Procedure for Preparation of

-102-

(3-Benzyl-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylic acid 32a and (3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylic acid 32b

The ester 31 (2 m mol) was dissolved in a solution of KOH (0.5 g) in water (5 ml) and dimethylsulfoxide (5 ml). The 5 solution was heated at 140 °C (bath temp.) for 5 hours. Ice-water was added. The mixture was washed with ether, acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the 10 residue was crystallized from AcOEt.

Other Preparations:

(3-Benzyl-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylic acid 32a

Mp, 182-183 °C (dec.). 60.3% Yield.

15

(3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)carboxylic acid 32b. Mp, 132 °C (dec.). 68.4% Yield.

20

Part H: General Procedure for Preparation of 3-Benzyl-2-methylindolizine 33a and 3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-methylindolizine 33b

25

A mixture of the carboxylic acid in xylene was heated under reflux for 2 hours. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was crystallized or used to the next preparation.

Preparation of 3-Benzyl-2-methylindolizine 33a

Mp, 96-97 °C. Quantitative yield.

30

Preparation of 3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-methylindolizine 33b

Quantitative yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.34 (3H, s), 4.22 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H, s) 6.00 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz), 6.25 (1H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 6.56 (1H, s), 7.0-7.5 (11H, m).

-103-

Part J: General Procedure for Preparation of (Indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 34 and 35a-k

These compounds were prepared according to the procedure described for the synthesis of compound 8 from compound 4.

5

Preparation of

(3-Benzyl-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 34

Mp, 198-199 °C (benzene). 49.3% Yield.

10 (3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35a.  
Mp, 188-189 °C. 63% Yield.

Other Preparations:

15 (3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N-methylamide 35b. Mp, 190-191 °C. 80% Yield.

(3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 35c. Mp, 199-200 °C (AcOEt). 43% Yield.

20 (8-Benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35d. Mp, 183-185 °C (ether-hexane). 79.0% Yield.

25 (8-Benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N-methylamide 35e. Mp, 200-201 °C (ether-hexane). 71% Yield.

30 (8-Benzyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 35f. Mp, 201-202 °C (ether-hexane). 88% Yield.

35 (3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35g. Mp, 212-214 °C. 96.2% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3472, 3197, 1678, 1627  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.44 (3H, s), 4.21 (2H, s), 4.75 (1H, br.s), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.14 (1H, br.s) 6.39 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.51 (1H, t,  $J=7.3$  Hz), 7.05-7.15 (2H, m),

-104-

7.20-7.5 (9H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>25</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>: C, 75.36; H, 5.57; N, 7.03. Found: C, 75.12; H, 5.66; N, 7.06.

(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35h. Mp, 145-148 °C (ether-hexane). 80% Yield.

(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35i. Mp, 182-185 °C (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-hexane). 76% Yield.

(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35j. Mp, 189-190 °C (benzene). 76.0% Yield.

(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 35k. Mp, 185-186 °C (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-hexane). Quantitative yield.

20 Part K: General Procedure for Preparation of (8-Hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36a,d-k

These compounds were prepared according to the procedure described for the synthesis of compound 20 from 19.

25 Other Preparations:

(3-Benzyl-2-ethyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36a. Mp, 194-195 °C (AcOEt).

30 Other Preparations

(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36d. Mp, 195-196 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane). 95.0% Yield.

35 (2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N-methylamide 36e. Mp, 186-189 °C (ether-hexane). 89% Yield.

-105-

(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 36f. Mp, 177-180 °C (ether-hexane). 95% Yield.

5

(3-Benzyl-8-hydroxy-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36g. Mp, 189-192 °C. 94.9% Yield.

10 (3-(m-Chlorobenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36h. Mp, 144-146 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 88% Yield.

15 (2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36i. Mp, 142-146 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 96% Yield.

(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36j. Mp, 176-178 °C (benzene). 84.5% Yield.

20 (2-Cyclopropyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36k. Mp, 189-191 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 95% Yield.

25 Part L: General Procedure for Preparation of (8-(Carboalkoxymethyloxy)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37a-d,f,g-j, 38a and 39d,i,k

These compounds were prepared according to the procedure described for the synthesis of compound 21 from 20.

30

Other Preparations:

(3-Benzyl-8-(carbethoxymethyloxy)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37a  
Mp, 191-192 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 23% Yield.

35

-106-

(3-Benzyl-8-(carbethoxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N-methylamide 37b. Mp, 197-198 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 72% Yield.

5 (3-Benzyl-8-(carbethoxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 37c. Mp, 140-141 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 39% Yield.

10 (8-(Carbethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37d. Mp, 127-129 °C (ether-hexane). 86.0% Yield.

(8-(Carbethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 37f.

Mp, 109.5-110.0 °C (ether-hexane). 79% Yield.

15 (3-Benzyl-8-(carbethoxymethoxy)-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37g. Mp, 193-195 °C. 41.4% Yield.

20 (8-(Carbethoxymethoxy)-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37h. Mp, 172-175 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 73% Yield.

25 (8-Carbethoxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 37j. 37.8% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3513, 3400, 1761, 1698, 1638, 1497 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

(3-Benzyl-8-(t-butoxycarbonylmethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 38a. Mp, 161-162 °C.

30 (8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 39d. Mp, 73-75 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane). 84% Yield.

(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 39i. Mp, 35 136-137 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 59% Yield.

-107-

(8-(Carbmethoxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 39k. Mp, 178-179 °C (AcOEt-hexane). 69% Yield.

5

Part M: General Procedure for Preparation of  
(8-(Carboxymethoxy)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide  
40a-d, f, g-k

1N-Aqueous potassium hydroxide (4 ml) was added to a  
10 solution of the ester (37-39, 2 m mol) in methanol (21 ml).  
The solution was stirred at room temperature for 40 min,  
washed with ether, acidified with 2N-HCl and extracted with  
ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried  
over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure,  
15 the residue was recrystallized.

Other Preparations:

(3-Benzyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40a

20 Mp, 244-245 °C (AcOEt-ether). 42% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr)  
3855, 2974, 2931, 1703, 1660, 1625, 1312, 1092 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>+CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 1.22 (3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 2.90 (2H, q, J=7.4  
Hz), 4.27 (2H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.37 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.73  
(1H, dd, J=6.6, 7.8 Hz), 7.06-7.43 (6H, m). [EIMS] m/z 380  
25 [M<sup>+</sup>]. Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>20</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> 0.7H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 64.18; H,  
5.49; N, 7.13. Found: C, 64.26; H, 5.27; N, 7.05.

(3-Benzyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N-methylamide 40b. Mp, 212-213 °C (AcOEt). 47% Yield.

30 (3-Benzyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 40c. Mp, 166-167 °C (AcOEt). 49% Yield.

(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40d. Mp, 209-212 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane).  
35 93% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 3316, 1704, 1601, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H  
NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO) δ 1.01 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.67 (2H, q, J=7.5

-108-

Hz), 4.18 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.41 (1H, d, J=7.3 Hz), 6.57-6.59 (2H, m), 7.14-7.57 (10H, m), 7.34 (1H, s), 13.09 (1H, br.s). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> 0.3H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.21; H, 5.37; N, 6.06. Found: C, 70.17; H, 5.35; N, 5.98.

5

(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxyl-N,N-dimethylamide 40f. Mp, 208-209 °C (ether-hexane). 93% Yield.

10 (3-Benzyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40g. Mp, 245-246 °C (dec.). 86.7% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3417, 1736, 1650, 1629, 1495 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>+CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.47 (3H, s), 4.24 (2H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.59 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 7.10 (2H, m), 7.2-7.3 (3H, m), 7.44 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub> 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 64.93; H, 5.01; N, 7.57. Found: C, 64.87; H, 5.02; N, 7.56.

20 (8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-(m-chlorobenzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40h. Mp, 230-233 °C (dec.) (ether-hexane). 79% Yield.

25 (8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(m-trifluoromethylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40i  
Mp, 235-237 °C (dec.) (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>-hexane). 97% Yield.

30 (8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40j. 68.4% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3429, 3338, 1730, 1649, 1612, 1588, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 40k. Mp, 205-207 °C (dec.) (AcOEt-hexane). 93% Yield.

-109-

Example 4

Part A: Preparation of

(8-(Cyanomethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizin-1-  
5 yl)glyoxylamide 41

The hydroxy compound (36h) was treated with bromoacetonitrile by the procedure cited for the synthesis of 37 from 36. Mp, 212-215 °C (ether). 45% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3484, 3226, 1659, 1629, 1497, 1305, 755  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO)  $\delta$  1.08 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.80 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.36 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.74 - 6.85 (2H, m), 7.01 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.21 (1H, s), 7.23-7.39 (3H, m), 7.78 (1H, s), 7.83 (1H, d, J=6.3 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>Cl: C, 63.72; H, 4.58; N, 10.62; Cl, 8.96. Found: C, 63.54; H, 4.69; N, 10.79; Cl, 8.69.

Part B: Preparation of

(8-(1H-Tetrazol-5-yl methyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 42

20 A mixture of the nitrile derivative (41, 100 mg, 0.253 m mol) and trimethyltinazide (68 mg, 0.329 m mol) in toluene (2.5 ml) was heated under reflux for 23 hours. The precipitate was collected by filtration and suspended in toluene (2 ml). Hydrogen chloride gas was introduced. The 25 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 min and then concentrated at reduced pressure. Ethyl acetate was added. The mixture was extracted with 1N-potassium hydroxide. The aqueous phase was washed with dichloromethane, acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. 30 The extracts were washed with water and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in ether. The insoluble materials were removed by filtration and hexane was added to the filtrate to give 25 mg (23% yield) of the titled compound, mp, 140-143 °C (dec.) 35 (ether-hexane).

-110-

IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3468, 3222, 3153, 1718, 1651, 1612, 1594, 1489  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.23 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.88 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 4.22 (2H, s), 5.65 (2H, s), 6.04 (1H, s), 6.29 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.50 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 6.92 (1H, s), 7.06-7.37 (5H, m).

Example 5

Part A: Preparation of

10 3-Benzylxyloxy-2-methylpyridine 44a

A mixture of 2-methyl-3-pyridinol (43, 16.4 g, 0.15 mol), pulverized potassium hydroxide (12.72 g, 0.195 mol), tetrabutylammonium bromide (2.42 g, 7.5 m mol) and benzyl bromide (18.7 ml, 0.158 mol) in tetrahydrofuran (380 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hours. Water (38 ml) was added. The mixture was concentrated at reduced pressure and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, 28.3 g (90% yield) of the titled compound was obtained.

20  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.56 (3H, s), 5.11 (2H, s), 7.04-7.16 (2H, m), 7.35-7.45 (5H, m), 8.08 (1H, dd,  $J=4.5, 1.5$  Hz).

Part B: Preparation of

25 3-Methoxy-2-methyl-1-(2-oxobutyl)-pyridinium bromide 45b

A mixture of 3-methoxypicoline (J. Yorgensen, H. C. Nielsen, N. Malhotra and J. Becher, J. Heterocyclic Chem., 29, 1841 (1992) (343 mg, 2.78 m mole) and 1-bromo-2-butanone (504 mg, 3.34 m mole) was heated at 70 °C for 10 min. The solid was washed with ethyl acetate to give a hygroscopic solid 711 mg (93.8%). Mp, 157-158 °C.

Part C-1: Preparation of

35 8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethylindolizine 46a

-111-

A mixture of 3-benzyloxy-2-methylpyridine (44a, 29.7 g, 0.149 mol) in ethyl acetate (17 ml) and 1-bromo-2-butanone (22.5 g, 0.149 mol) was stirred at 70 °C for 0.5 hours. Ethyl acetate (23 ml) was added to the reaction mixture and the solid was recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give 47.04 g (90.1%) of 45a. Quaternary salt 45a (47.04 g, 0.134 mol) in benzene (150 ml) and DBU (44.2 ml, 0.295 mol) were refluxed for 0.75 hours, poured into ice-water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the titled oily compound 46a, 26.62 g (79% yield) was obtained.  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.28 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 2.70 (2H, q, J=7.6 Hz), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.99 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.29 (1H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 6.48 (1H, s), 7.10-7.52 (7H, m).

Compounds 46b-e were prepared according to the procedure cited above.

Part C-2: Preparation of

2-Ethyl-8-methoxy-indolizine 46b

A solution of 1, 8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene (DBU) (341 mg, 2.24 m mole) in benzene (1 ml) was added to a mixture of the salt (45b, 277 mg, 1.02 m mole) in benzene (4 ml). The mixture was heated under reflux for 3 hours in nitrogen. After cooling, the mixture was filtered and washed with benzene. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give an oil 178 mg (quantitative yield).  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.28 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.70 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.91 (3H, s), 5.93 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.32 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.40 (1H, s), 7.10 (1H, s), 7.50 (1H, d, J=6.8 Hz).

Other Preparations:

8-Benzylxy-2-methylindolizine 46c

92% Yield. Oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.31 (3H, s), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz), 6.28 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.44 (1H, s), 7.08 (1H, s), 7.34-7.55 (6H, m).

-112-

2-Cyclopropyl-8-methoxyindolizine 46d

72% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.60-0.68 (2H, m), 0.86-0.96 (2H, m), 1.83-1.97 (1H, m), 3.89 (3H, s), 5.92 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.25-6.34 (1H+1H, m), 7.11 (1H, d,  $J=1.6$  Hz), 7.47 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz).

8-Benzylxy-2-cyclopropylindolizine 46e

69% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.61-0.69 (2H, m), 0.86-0.96 (2H, m), 1.84-1.97 (1H, m), 5.15 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$  Hz), 6.25-6.32 (1H+1H, m), 7.12 (1H, d,  $J=2.0$  Hz), 7.35-7.49 (6H, m).

Part D: General Procedure for Preparation of 8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(substituted carbonyl)indolizine 47

This compound was prepared from 46, according to the procedure described for the preparation of 18 from 17.

Other Preparations:

20 8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(p-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 47a  
Mp, 114-115 °C. 80% Yield.

25 8-Benzylxy-3-cyclohexylcarbonyl-2-ethylindolizine 47b. Mp,  
88-89 C, (Hexane-EtOAc). 77% Yield.

8-Benzylxy-3-cyclopentylcarbonyl-2-ethylindolizine 47c. Mp,  
63-64 C, (Hexane). 68% Yield.

30 8-Benzylxy-3-cycloheptylcarbonyl-2-ethylindolizine 47d. Mp,  
85-86 C, (Hexane). 74% Yield.

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-oxopentyl)indolizine 47e. Mp, 84 C,  
(Hexane-EtOAc). 89% Yield.

35 8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-oxo-2-propylpentyl)indolizine 47f.  
Mp, 137-138 °C (hexane-EtOAc). 25% Yield.

-113-

8-Benzylloxy-2-ethyl-3-(naphth-2-ylcarbonyl)indolizine 47g.  
70% Yield.

8-Benzylloxy-3-(3,5-di-t-butyl)benzoyl-2-ethylindolizine 47h.  
Mp, 131 °C (Hexane:EtOAc). 82% Yield.

5

8-Benzylloxy-2-ethyl-3-(1-oxo-2-phenylethyl)indolizine 47i.  
Mp, 139-140 °C (Hexane:EtOAc). 58% Yield.

3-(o-Benzylbenzoyl)-8-benzylloxy-2-ethylindolizine 47j  
10 Yellow oil 58% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (neat) 2964, 1590, 1548,  
1438, 1302  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

8-Benzylloxy-2-ethyl-3-(thiophen-2-yl)indolizine 47k. Mp,  
141-142 °C (Hexane / EtOAc). 82% Yield.

15

Other Preparations:

8-Benzylloxy-2-ethyl-3-(3-(thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-  
yl)indolizine 47l

20 3-(Thiophen-2-yl)thiophene-2-carboxylic acid was  
prepared by hydrolysis of the methyl ester (Y. Hamanaka, S.  
Fukushima and T. Hiyama, Heterocycles, 30, 303 (1990)). Mp,  
137-138 °C (Hexane:EtOAc).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.10 (1H, dd,  
 $J=3.6, 5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.26 (1H, d,  $J=5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.39 (1H, dd,  $J=1.0,$   
 $5.0 \text{ Hz}$ ), 7.55-7.60 (2H, m). IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 2845, 2606, 1671,  
1273, 1245  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ . Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{O}_2\text{S}$ : C, 51.41; H,  
2.88; N, 30.50. Found: C, 51.39; H, 3.06; N, 30.24.

25 The acid chloride was treated as above but the product  
could not be purified and used to the next preparation  
30 without further purification.

8-Benzylloxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-methoxybenzoyl)indolizine 47m. Mp,  
64-67 °C. 77% Yield.

-114-

8-Benzyl-2-ethyl-3-(1-oxo-2-(4-n-pentylcyclohexyl)ethyl)indolizine 47o. Mp, 64-65 °C (Hexane). 41% Yield.

5 8-Benzyl-2-methy-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 47q. Mp, 114-116 °C. 66.9% Yield.

8-Benzyl-3-benzoyl-2-cyclopropylindolizine 47r. Mp, 144-146 °C. 81.4% Yield.

10 3-(p-n-Butylbenzoyl)-2-ethyl-8-methoxyindolizine 47s. Mp, 90-91 °C, (hexane). 72.8% Yield.

8-Benzyl-2-methyl-3-(1-oxo-2-cyclohexylethyl)indolizine 47t. Mp, 105-106 °C (Hexane:EtOAc). 61% Yield.

15 3-Cyclohexylcarbonyl-2-cyclopropyl-8-methoxy-indolizine 47u. Mp, 122-123 °C. 38.9% Yield.

8-Benzyl-3-cyclopentylcarbonyl-2-methylindolizine 47w  
20 Mp, 93.5-94.5 °C. 24 % Yield.

Part E: Preparation of

8-Benzyl-3-(substituted methyl)-2-ethylindolizine 48

25 General procedure 1)

These compound were prepared from 47, according to the procedure described for the preparation of 28 from 27.

General procedure 2)

30 A mixture of 47, sodium borohydride (5 eq. mol), pulverized aluminum trichloride (3 eq. mol) in tetrahydrofuran was heated under reflux for 45 min. Ice-water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After 35 removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was purified by recrystallization or column chromatography.

-115-

Other Preparations:

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(p-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 48a

Quantitative yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.26 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 2.74 (2H, q,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 4.28 (2H, s), 5.18 (2H, s), 6.02 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 6.28 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 7.11 (1H, d,  $J=8.4$  Hz), 7.23-7.71 (14H, m).

8-Benzylxy-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-ethylindolizine 48c

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.15-1.34 (5H, m), 1.41-1.74 (6H, m), 2.18 (1H, quint,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 2.65 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.82 (2H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 5.17 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 6.34 (1H, dd,  $J=7.0, 7.4$  Hz), 6.53 (1H, s), 7.3-7.5 (6H, m).

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-pentylindolizine 48e

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 2950, 2920, 1550, 1520, 1365, 1250  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-propylpentyl)indolizine 48f. 25%

Yield.

20

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(naphth-2-ylmethyl)indolizine 48g.

8-Benzylxy-3-(o-benzylbenzyl)-2-ethylindolizine 48j. 91%

25 Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (neat) 2922, 1523, 1371, 1312  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-((3-thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolizine 48l.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.22 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.63 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 4.41 (2H, s), 5.06 (2H, s), 5.92 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 6.17 (1H, dd,  $J=7.0, 7.2$  Hz), 6.51 (1H, s), 6.91-7.42 (11H, m).

8-Benzylxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-methoxybenzyl)indolizine 48m.

Quantitative yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.29 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz),

35 2.72 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.21 (2H, s), 5.17 (2H,

-116-

s), 6.01 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.26 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.58-6.75 (4H, m), 7.11-7.44 (5H, m), 7.46-7.63 (2H, m).

8-Benzyl-2-ethoxy-3-(4-n-pentylcyclohexyl)methylindolizine  
5 48o.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.70-1.80 (24H, m), 2.57-2.71 (4H, m),  
5.17 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.34 (1H, dd, J=7.0,  
7.4 Hz), 6.53 (1H, s), 7.26-7.51 (6H, m).

8-Benzyl-2-ethoxy-3-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylindolizine 48q.  
10 Mp, 98-99 °C. Quantitative yield.  
3-Benzyl-8-benzyl-2-cyclopropylindolizine 48r. 94% Yield.  
3-(p-n-Butylbenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-methoxyindolizine 48s. Method  
2). Oil. 67.9% Yield.  
8-Benzyl-2-ethoxy-3-cyclohexylmethylindolizine 48t.  
15  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.00-1.26 (5H, m), 1.55-2.25 (6H, m),  
2.25 (3H, s), 2.68 (2H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 5.16 (2H, s), 5.98 (1H,  
d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.34 (1H, dd, J=6.9, 7.2 Hz), 6.47 (1H, s),  
7.30-7.49 (6H, m).

20 Part F: Preparation of  
2-(8-Benzyl-2-ethoxy-3-(substituted methyl)-indolin-1-  
yl)-glyoxylamide 49

These compounds were prepared from 48, according to the  
procedure described for the synthesis of 35 from 34.

25 Other Preparations:

2-(8-Benzyl-2-ethyl-3-(p-phenylbenzyl)indolizine-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 49a

Mp, 196-199 °C. 61% Yield.

30 2-(8-Benzyl-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 49b. Mp, 176 C, (Hexane-EtOAc). 85% Yield.

35 2-(8-Benzyl-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 49c. Mp, 161-162 C, (Hexane-AcOEt). 77%  
Yield.

- 2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-cycloheptylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49d. Mp, 144-145 °C. (Hexane). 76% Yield.
- 5 2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-oxopentylinolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49e. Mp, 141-142 °C. (Hexane-EtOAc). 77% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-propylpentyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49f. Mp, 159-160 °C. (Hexane-EtOAc). 82% Yield.
- 10 2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(naphth-2-ylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49g. Mp, 209-210 °C. (EtOAc). 77% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-(3,5-di-t-butylbenzyl)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49h. Mp, 230-231 °C (EtOAc). 59% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-phenylethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49i. Mp, 188-189 °C (EtOAc). 79% Yield.
- 15 2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-(o-benzylbenzyl)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49j. Mp, 178-179 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 93% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(thiophen-2-yl methyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49k. Mp, 191-192 °C (EtOAc). 73% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-((3-thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49l. Mp, 208-209 °C (EtOAc). 10 % Yield (2 steps).
- 20 2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-methoxybenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49m. Mp, 180-182 °C. 61% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(o-nitrobenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49n. Mp, 205-208 °C. 8% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-2-ethyl-3-((4-n-pentylcyclohexyl)methyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49o. Mp, 169-170 °C (EtOAc). 80% Yield.
- 25 2-(3-(Adamant-1-yl methyl)-8-benzylxyloxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 49p. Mp, 225-226 °C (EtOAc). 21% Yield (3 steps).  
2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-(biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 49q. Mp, 198-200 °C. 82.7% Yield.

-118-

- 2-(3-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)-  
glyoxylamide 49r. Mp, 206-207 °C. 30% Yield.  
2-(3-(p-n-Butylbenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-methoxyindolin-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 49s. Mp, 195-196 °C, (benzene). 96.8% Yield.  
5 2-(8-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methylindolin-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 49t. Mp, 222-223 °C (EtOAc). 88% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolin-  
1-yl)glyoxylamide 49v  
8-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-3-cyclopentylcarbonyl-2-cyclopropylindoline 47v  
10 and 8-benzyloxy-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindoline  
48v were prepared by the above procedure and used to the next  
preparation without further purification. Mp, 186-187 °C. 28  
% Yield.  
2-(8-Benzyl-8-benzyloxy-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-methylindolin-1-  
15 yl)glyoxylamide 49w

Preparation of

Compound 48w was prepared by the general procedure 2)  
cited above and used in the next preparation without further  
20 purification. Mp, 174-175 °C. 66 % Yield.

Part G: General Procedures for Preparation of  
2-(3-(Substituted methyl)-8-hydroxy-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)-  
glyoxylamide 50

25

General procedure 1)

These compounds were prepared from 49, according to the  
procedure described for the synthesis of 36 from 35.

30 General procedure 2)

A 1 M solution of borontribromide in dichloromethane  
(3.3 eq. mol) was added to a solution of 49 in  
dichloromethane. The mixture was stirred for 3 hours to 1  
day. Ice-water was added. The organic phase was washed with  
35 water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at

-119-

reduced pressure, the residue was purified by recrystallization or column chromatography.

Preparation of

- 5 2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50a  
Quantitative yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.25 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.93 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 4.25 (2H, s), 5.76 (1H, br.s), 6.39 (1H, br.s), 6.70 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 6.79 (1H, t,  $J=7.1$  Hz), 7.08-7.78 (10H, m), 12.90 (1H, s).

Other Preparations:

- 2-(3-Cyclopentylmethyl-2-ethyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50c.  
15 2-(3-Cycloheptylmethyl-2-ethyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50d.  
2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-oxopentylinolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50e.  
20 3-(2, 5-Di-t-butylbenzyl)-8-hydroxy-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50h.  
2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50k. Mp, 163-164 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 40% Yield.  
25 2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-((3-thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50l.  
2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(m-methoxybenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50m. Mp, 140-143 °C. 86% Yield.  
2-(2-Ethyl-8-hydroxy-3-(o-nitrobenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50n. Mp, 174-178 °C (dec.). 85% Yield.  
30 8-Hydroxy-2-ethyl-3-(4-n-pentylcyclohexylmethyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50o. Mp, 99-100 °C (hexane:EtOAc).  
2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-hydroxy-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 50q. Mp, 129-130 °C. 77.6% Yield.  
35 2-(3-Benzyl-2-cyclopropyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 50r. mp, 188-190 °C. 96.7% Yield.

-120-

2-(3-(*p*-n-Butylbenzyl)-2-ethyl-8-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50s. Mp, 145-148 °C, (benzene). 59.3% Yield.  
2-(3-Cyclohexylmethyl-8-hydroxy-2-methylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50t.

5

Part H: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(8-Carbomethoxymethyloxy-2-ethyl-3-(substituted methyl)-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 51

Compound 50 (1 m mol), methyl bromoacetate (1.1 m mol),  
10  $K_2CO_3$  (3 m mol), KI (0.2 m mol), DMF (3 ml) was stirred for 5 hours. Water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried ( $Na_2SO_4$ ). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the residue was purified by recrystallization or column chromatography.

15

Other Preparations:

2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carbomethoxymethyloxy)-3-(*o*-phenylbenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51a.  
20 Mp, 221-222 °C. 54% Yield.

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51b. Mp, 149-150 C, (Hexane-EtOAc). 19% Yield from 49b.

25 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51c. Mp, 158-159 C, (AcOEt). Quantitative yield.

30 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-3-cycloheptylmethyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51d. Mp, 147-148 C, (AcOEt). 79% Yield.

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-oxopentylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51e. Mp, 140-141 C, (Hexane-EtOAc). 36% Yield.

35 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(2-propylpentyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51f. Mp, 114-115 C, (Hexane-EtOAc). 84% Yield.

-121-

- 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(naphth-2-ylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51g. Mp, 195-196 °C, (EtOAc). Quantitative yield.
- 2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-(3,5-di-t-butyl)benzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51h. Mp, 186-187 °C (EtOAc). 83% Yield (2 steps).
- 2-(8-(carbomethoxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-phenylethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51i. Mp, 175-176 °C (EtOAc). 47% Yield (2 steps).
- 2-(3-o-Benzylbenzyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51j. Mp, 190-191 °C (EtOAc). 65% Yield (2 steps).
- 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(thiophen-2-yl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51k. Mp, 182 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 75% Yield.
- 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-((3-thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51l. Mp, 176-177 °C.
- 2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(m-methoxybenzyl)indoline-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51m. Mp, 155-157 °C. 85% Yield.
- 2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(o-nitrobenzyl)indoline-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51n. Mp, 156-157 °C. 96% Yield.
- 2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-((4-n-pentylcyclohexyl)methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51o. Mp, 175-176 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 92% Yield (2 steps).
- 2-(3-(Adamant-1-ylmethyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51p. Mp, 191-192 °C (EtOAc). 38% Yield (2 steps).
- 2-(3-Benzyl-8-carbomethoxymethoxy-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 51r. Mp, 186-188 °C. 74.5% Yield.

-122-

2-(3-(p-n-Butylbenzyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51s. Mp, 174-176 °C, (EtOAc:benzene). 70.9% Yield.

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methylindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51t. Mp, 177-178 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 68% Yield (2 steps).

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51v

2-(3-Cyclopentylmethyl-2-cyclopropyl-8-hydroxyindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 50v was prepared by the general procedure 2) cited above and used to the next preparation without further purification. Mp, 175-176 °C. 70.4 % Yield.

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-methylindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 51w

15

Other Preparations:

Compound 50w was prepared by the general procedure 2) cited above and used in the next preparation without further purification. Mp, 149-150 °C. 63 % Yield.

20

Part I: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(substituted methyl)-indolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52

Hydrolysis of 51 was carried out by the procedure described for the preparation of 22 with lithium hydroxide.

Other Preparations:

2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-3-(p-phenylbenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52a

30 Mp, 229-234 °C (dec.). 84% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3417, 1734, 1653, 1629, 1496, 1237  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  1.14 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.83 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.36 (2H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.44 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.70 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 7.20 (2H, d, J=8.4 Hz), 7.30-7.36 (2H, m), 7.43 (2H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 7.55-7.64 (4H, m), 7.67 (1H, br.s), 7.73 (1H, d, J=6.6 Hz), 12.80-13.60 (1H, br.). Analyses: Calc'd for

-123-

C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.1H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.76; H, 5.32; N, 6.11. Found: C, 70.53; H, 5.40; N, 6.19.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethylindolin-1-

5 yl)glyoxylamide 52b

Mp, 224-225 °C (AcOEt).

Na salt: <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO) 1.0-1.15 (8H, m), 1.5-1.66 (6H, m), 2.6-2.7 (4H, m), 4.1 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.76 (1H, dd, J=6.6, 7.5 Hz), 7.8 (1H, d, J=6.6 Hz).

10 2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52c

43% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3461, 2952, 1703, 1636, 1583, 1536, 1306, 1262 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Calc'd for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.4H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 63.28; H, 6.58; N, 7.38.

15 Found: C, 63.25; H, 6.40; N, 7.28.

Na salt: IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3450, 1664, 1618, 1489 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-3-cycloheptylmethyl-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52d

76% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3474, 2924, 1724, 1623 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

20

Na salt: IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3474, 2924, 1675, 1618, 1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

Calc'd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>2</sub>NaO<sub>5</sub>•1.5H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 58.79; H, 6.73; N, 6.23, Na, 5.11. Found: C, 58.86; H, 6.70; N, 6.34; Na, 5.13.

25 2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-pentylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52e

Mp, 232-233 °C (acetone:AcOEt). 37% Yield. IR v<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3476, 2931, 1709, 1638, 1613 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>+CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 0.87-0.95 (3H, m), 1.19 (3H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 1.32-1.62 (6H, m), 2.73-2.86 (4H, m), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.36 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz), 6.70 (1H, dd, J=6.6, 7.6 Hz), 7.61 (1H, d, J=6.6 Hz). [MS] m/z 360 [M]<sup>+</sup>.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(2-propylpentyl)indolin-1-

35 yl)glyoxylamide 52f

-124-

Mp, 176-177 °C (hexane:AcOEt). 81% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3388, 2931, 2871, 1736, 1644, 1619, 1237  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  0.85-0.90 (6H, m), 1.15-1.5 (11H, m), 1.70 (1H, m), 2.72-2.83 (4H, m), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.36 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.68 (1H, dd,  $J=6.9, 7.8$  Hz), 7.58 (1H, d,  $J=6.9$  Hz). [MS] m/z 402 [M] $^+$ . Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{30}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 1.1\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 62.57; H, 7.69; N, 6.63. Found: C, 62.57; H, 7.28; N, 6.59.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(naphth-2-yl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52g

Mp, 236-237 °C (AcOEt). 33% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3441, 1730, 1643, 1619, 1500, 1243  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.25 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.94 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.42 (2H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.35 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.52 (1H, dd,  $J=7.0, 7.4$  Hz), 7.25-7.82 (13H, m). [MS] m/z 430 [M] $^+$ . Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 68.05; H, 5.30; N, 6.35. Found: C, 67.94; H, 5.18; N, 6.33.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-(3,5-di-t-butylbenzyl)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamine 52h

Mp, 144-145 °C (hexane:EtOAc). 43% Yield.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(2-phenylethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52i

Mp, 233-234 °C (EtOAc). 48% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3477, 1707, 1637, 1491  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.13 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.71 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.84-2.92 (2H, m), 3.10-3.18 (2H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.69 (1H, dd,  $J=6.8, 7.4$  Hz), 7.15-7.33 (5H, m), 7.60 (1H, d,  $J=6.8$  Hz). [MS] m/z 394 [M] $^+$ . Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : C, 66.99; H, 5.62; N, 7.1. Found: C, 66.85; H, 5.73; N, 7.01.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-o-benzylbenzyl-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52j

Mp, 220-221 °C (EtOAc). 42% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3438, 1731, 1620, 1494, 1217  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.11 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 2.72 (2H, q,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 4.07 (2H, s), 4.19 (2H,

-125-

s), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.30 (1H, d, J=6.8 Hz), 6.38 (1H, dd, J=6.8, 7.8 Hz), 6.54 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.71 (1H, d, J=5.8 Hz), 7.00-7.36 (8H, m). [MS] m/z 470 [M]<sup>+</sup>. Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>: C, 71.48; H, 5.57; N, 5.95. Found: C, 71.27; H, 5.64; N, 5.92.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52k

Mp, 251-252 °C (EtOAc). 32% Yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3422, 10 1702, 1659, 1625, 1535, 1494 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO) δ 1.14 (3H, t, J=6.8 Hz), 2.80 (2H, q, J=6.8 Hz), 4.50 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d, J=8.0 Hz), 6.72 (1H, dd, J=6.8, 8.0 Hz), 6.90-6.94 (2H, m), 7.29-7.32 (2H, m), 7.67 (1H, br.s), 7.82 (1H, d, J=6.8 Hz). [MS] m/z 386 [M]<sup>+</sup>. Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S•0.6H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 57.45; H, 4.87; N, 7.05; S, 8.07. Found: C, 57.50; H, 4.71; N, 6.89; S, 8.11.

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-((3-thiophen-2-yl)thiophen-2-ylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52l

Mp, 209-210 °C. 54.5% Yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO) δ 1.11 (3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 2.75 (2H, q, J=7.4 Hz), 4.60 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.45 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.69 (1H, dd, J=7.0, 7.4 Hz), 7.20-7.34 (4H, m), 7.46-7.65 (4H, m). IR ν<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3400, 1645, 1591 cm<sup>-1</sup>. Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>20</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S<sub>2</sub>: C, 58.96; H, 4.30; N, 5.98; S, 13.69. Found: C, 58.59; H, 4.31; N, 5.92; S, 13.45.

2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-3-(m-methoxybenzyl)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52m

Mp, 219-221 °C (dec.). 80% Yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 3310, 3173, 1703, 1596, 1492 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (d<sub>6</sub>-DMSO) δ 1.11 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.80 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.70 (3H, s), 4.28 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.43 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.60-6.81 (4H, m), 7.18 (1H, t, J=7.8 Hz), 7.32 (1H, br.s), 7.63-7.72 (2H, m), 35 12.70-13.30 (1H, br.). Analyses: Calc'd for

-126-

$C_{22}H_{22}N_2O_6 \cdot 0.8H_2O$ : C, 62.20; H, 5.60; N, 6.59. Found: C, 62.00; H, 5.37; N, 6.54.

2-(2-Ethyl-8-(carboxymethoxy)-3-(o-nitrobenzyl)indolizine-  
5 1-yl)glyoxylamide 52n

Mp, 208-210 °C (dec.). 69% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3350, 1750, 1600, 1493, 1344, 1308, 1235  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  1.04 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 2.72 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 4.64 (2H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 6.56-6.61 (1H, m), 6.68 10 (1H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 7.36 (1H, br.s), 7.45-7.59 (2H, m), 7.64-7.75 (2H, m), 8.10-8.16 (1H, m), 12.80-13.40 (1H, br.). Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{21}H_{19}N_3O_7 \cdot 0.3H_2O$ : C, 58.55; H, 4.59; N, 9.75. Found: C, 58.57; H, 4.77; N, 9.47.

15 2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(4-n-pentylcyclohexylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52o

Mp, 224-225 °C (EtOAc). 59% Yield (from Na salt). IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3472, 2922, 1706, 1636, 1489  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  0.70-1.80 (24H, m), 2.60-2.80 (4H, m), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.41 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.74 (1H, dd,  $J=6.6, 7.8$  Hz), 7.29 (1H, br.s), 7.62 (1H, br.s), 7.89 (1H, d,  $J=6.6$  Hz). [MS] m/z 479 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 501 [M+Na]<sup>+</sup>. Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{26}H_{36}N_2O_5 \cdot 0.7H_2O$ : C, 66.56; H, 8.03; N, 5.97. Found: C, 66.42; H, 7.65; N, 5.93.

25 Na salt: 89% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3469, 2921, 1619, 1490  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  0.80-1.80 (24H, m), 2.60-2.80 (4H, m), 4.14 (2H, s), 6.21 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.67 (1H, dd,  $J=6.6, 7.8$  Hz), 7.16 (1H, br.s), 7.75 (1H, d,  $J=6.6$  Hz), 7.90 (1H, br.s).

30

2-(3-(Adamant-1-ylmethyl)-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52p. Mp, 237-238 °C (EtOAc). 60% Yield.

2-(3-Benzyl-8-carboxymethoxy-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)-35 glyoxylamide 52r. Mp, 235-237 °C. 74.6% Yield.

-127-

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3414, 3304, 2722, 2600, 2530, 1727, 1647 (sh),  
 1623, 1605 (sh)  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.47-0.55 (2H, m),  
 0.90-1.00 (2H, m), 2.05-2.18 (1H, m), 4.43 (2H, s), 4.75 (2H,  
 s), 6.27 (1H, br.s), 6.41 (1H, d,  $J=7.6$  Hz), 6.59 (1H, t,  
 J=7.1 Hz), 7.02-7.06 (2H+1H, m+br.s), 7.25-7.36 (4H, m).  
 Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{22}\text{H}_{20}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 66.73; H, 5.19; N,  
 7.07. Found: C, 66.77; H, 5.20; N, 7.13.

2-(3-(p-n-Butylbenzyl)-8-(carboxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolinizin-10 1-yl)glyoxylamide 52s

Mp, 217-220 °C, (EtOAc). 92.4% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol)  
 3422, 1735, 1653, 1630, 1497  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3 + \text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$   
 0.91 (3H, t,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 1.22 (3H, t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 1.44 (2H, m),  
 1.56 (2H, m), 2.56 (2H, t,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 2.88 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz),  
 4.21 (2H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.35 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.56 (1H,  
 t,  $J=6.9$  Hz), 6.99 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 7.08 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$  Hz),  
 7.40 (1H, d,  $J=6.9$  Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  
 $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 0.1\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 72.65; H, 6.94; N, 7.37. Found: C,  
 72.57; H, 6.93; N, 7.39.

20 2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methylindolinizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52t

Mp, 235-236 °C (hexane:EtOAc). IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3475, 2924,  
 1703, 1637, 1602, 1488, 1301  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6\text{-DMSO}$ )  $\delta$  1.00-  
 1.80 (11H, m). 2.25 (3H, s), 2.75 (2H, d,  $J=6.2$  Hz), 4.7 (2H,  
 s), 6.42 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.75 (1H, dd,  $J=7.0$ , 7.4 Hz),  
 7.29 (1H, br.s), 7.60 (1H, br.s), 7.90 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz).  
 [MS] m/z 372 [M]<sup>+</sup>. Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.8\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C,  
 62.10; H, 6.67; N, 7.24. Found: C, 62.02; H, 6.40; N, 6.98.

30 Na salt: 76% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3447, 2923, 1665,  
 1619, 1489, 1409  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6\text{-DMSO}$ )  $\delta$  0.95-1.75 (11H, m),  
 2.22 (3H, s), 2.72 (2H, d,  $J=6.3$  Hz), 4.15 (2H, s), 6.22 (1H,  
 d,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 6.68 (1H, dd,  $J=6.9$ , 7.5 Hz), 7.77 (1H, d,  
 $J=6.9$  Hz). [MS] m/z 395 [M+H]<sup>+</sup>, 417 [M+Na]<sup>+</sup>.

-128-

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52v. Mp, 237-238 °C. 20 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  max (KBr) 3430, 2951, 1730, 1647, 1623, 1499, 1240  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  0.38-0.44 (2H, m), 0.78-5 0.90 (2H, m), 1.16-1.90 (9H, m), 2.16 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.33 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.69 (1H, dd, J=6.6, 7.8 Hz), 7.33 (1H, br.s), 7.67 (1H, br.s), 7.88 (1H, d, J=6.6 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{21}H_{24}N_2O_5$ : C, 65.61; H, 6.29; N, 7.29. Found: C, 65.33; H, 6.20; N, 7.28.

10

2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-3-cyclopentylmethyl-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 52w. Mp, 249-251 °C (dec.). 85 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3470, 3254, 1704, 1636, 1598, 1537, 1488, 1302  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  1.16-1.31 (2H, m), 1.42-1.73 (6H, m), 2.03-2.20 (1H, m), 2.28 (3H, s), 2.87 (2H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.43 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.75 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 7.29 (1H, br.s), 7.61 (1H, br.s), 7.95 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 12.70-13.38 (1H, br.s). Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{19}H_{22}N_2O_5$ : C, 63.68; H, 6.19; N, 7.82. Found: C, 63.42; H, 6.18; N, 7.69.  
Na salt: Mp, >250 °C. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3221, 1677, 1653, 1499, 1415  $cm^{-1}$ . Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{19}H_{21}N_2O_5Na$ : C, 60.00; H, 5.57; N, 7.36; Na, 6.04. Found: C, 60.28; H, 5.70; N, 7.30; Na, 6.06.

25

Example 6

Part A: Preparation of

3-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-methylpyridine 53

30 A solution of methyl bromoacetate (1.31 g, 8.56 m mole) in tetrahydrofuran (5 ml) was added dropwise to a mixture of 3-hydroxy-2-methylpyridine (0.793 g, 7.27 m mole), pulverized potassium hydroxide (0.768 g, 11.8 m mole) and tetrabutylammonium bromide (30 mg, 0.09 m mole) in 35 tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Ice-water was added.

-129-

The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with water, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (25 g) in ethyl acetate:hexane (2:1) to give an oil, 791 mg (60.1%).

5       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.55 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.67 (2H, s), 6.97 (1H, dd,  $J=8.2$  Hz), 7.09 (1H, dd,  $J=8.2, 4.8$  Hz), 8.14 (1H, dd,  $J=1.4, 4.6$  Hz).

10     Preparation of

(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-methylindolizine 54a

(2-Methylpyridin-3-yloxy)acetic acid methyl ester (53, 1.75 g, 9.66 m mol) and chloroacetone (0.77 ml, 9.66 m mol) were heated at 95 °C under  $\text{N}_2$  for 2 hours. The DBU (3.2 ml,

15    21.3 m mol) in benzene (11 ml) were added to the salt. The mixture was then refluxed under  $\text{N}_2$  for 1hr, poured to ice-water and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvents at reduced pressure, the residue was recrystallized  
20    from ether-hexane to give 804 mg (40% yield) of the titled compound. Mp, 59-62 °C.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.30 (3H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 5.82 (1H, d,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 6.26 (1H, t,  $J=6.9$  Hz), 6.46 (1H, s), 7.08 (1H, s), 7.51 (1H, d,  $J=6.6$  Hz).

25

Part B: Preparation of 8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethylindolizine 54b

A solution of 1-bromo-2-butanone (470 mg, 3.12 m mole) in ethyl acetate (3 ml) was added to a solution of 53 (565 mg, 3.12 m mole) in ethyl acetate (5 ml). The solution was heated under reflux for 1 hour and the volatile materials were removed by distillation under reduced pressure to give an oil.

30       $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.17 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.87 (2H, q,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 3.84 (3H, s), 5.01 (2H, s), 6.16

-130-

(2H, s), 7.84 (1H, dd, J=8.6, 6.0 Hz), 8.02 (1H, dd, J=8.8, 1.0 Hz), 8.78 (1H, dd, J=6.4, 1.0 Hz).

A mixture of the salt and DBU (1.20 g) in benzene (5 ml) was heated under reflux for 1 hour, washed with water, dried 5 (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (40 g) in hexane:ethyl acetate (3:2) to give an oil, 601 mg (82.6% from 53). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.29 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.70 (2H, q, J=7.8 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 5.86 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 6.30 (1H, 10 t, J=7.1 Hz), 6.51 (1H, s), 7.11 (1H, s), 7.56 (1H, d, J=4.2 Hz).

Other Preparations:

(2-Isopropylindolin-8-yloxy)acetic acid methyl ester 54c

15 This compound was prepared by the procedure cited above. 59% Yield. Oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.30 (6H, d, J=6.6 Hz), 3.02 (1H, sept, J=6.6 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 5.82 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.27 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.53 (1H, s), 7.12 (1H, s), 7.53 (1H, d, J=7.0 Hz).

20

8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-2-cyclopropylindolizine 54d

This compound was prepared by the procedure cited above. Oil. 76% Yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.65 (2H, m), 0.92 (2H, m), 1.90 (1H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 5.82 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.28 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.28 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.34 (1H, s), 7.13 (1H, d, J=1.4 Hz), 7.50 (1H, d, J=6.8 Hz).

2-t-Butyl-8-(carbomethoxymethyloxy)indolizine 54e

This compound was prepared by the procedure cited above. 30 Oil. 48.0% Yield.

8-(Carbomethoxymethyloxy)-2-cyclopentylindolizine 54f

This compound was prepared by the procedure cited above. Oil. 14.3% Yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.6-2.2 (8H, m), 3.11 (1H, m), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 5.84 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz),

-131-

6.29 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.53 (1H, s), 7.14 (1H, s), 7.34 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz).

Part C: Preparation of 8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-

5 (o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 55b

This compound was prepared from 54b, according to the procedure cited for the preparation of 47 from 46. 83% Yield.  
1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.05 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.07 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz}, 3.82 (3H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.31 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.49 10 (1H, d, J=0.6 Hz), 6.65 (1H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 7.10-7.25 (3H, m), 7.30-7.40 (2H, m), 7.42-7.58 (5H, m), 9.40 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz).

Preparation of

15 8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-cyclohexanecarbonyl-2-  
cyclopropylindolizine 55d

This compound was prepared from 54d, according to the procedure, described for the preparation of 47 from 46. Mp, 110-111.5 °C. 74% Yield.

20

Part D: General Procedure for Preparation of

25 2-Alkyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(substituted  
methyl)indolizine 56

A solution of 54 (1.30 m mole) and alkyliodide (1.56 m  
25 mole) in benzene (5 ml) was allowed to stand at room  
temperature for 2 days. Ethyl acetate was added. The mixture  
was washed with sodium hydrogencarbonate and washed with  
water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced  
pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel in  
30 hexane:benzene (1:2).

Other Preparations:

8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-  
35 phenylbenzyl)indolizine 56b. 56% Yield. Oil. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  
δ 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.64 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.81 (3H,  
s), 4.11 (2H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 5.80 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.17

-132-

(1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.59 (1H, s), 6.68 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.1-7.55 (7H, m).

5 (3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-isopropylindolizine 56c. Mp, 115-117 °C. 37% Yield.

8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 56d. Mp, 130-131 °C (hexane). 33% Yield.

10 2-t-Butyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 56e. Mp, 155-157 °C (hexane). 22.5% Yield.

8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-cyclopentyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 56f. Mp, 145-148 °C (hexane). 26.2% Yield.

15

8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(m-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 56g.

The product could not be isolated from 1,3-disubstituted  
20 indolizine and used in the next preparation without further purification.

8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)indolizine 56h.

25 The product could not be isolated from 1,3-disubstituted indolizine and used in the next preparation without further purification.

30 8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolizine 56j.

The product could not be isolated from 1,3-disubstituted indolizine and used in the next preparation without further purification.

35 8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolizine 56k. 42.8% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$

-133-

0.64-0.69 (2H, m), 0.88-0.94 (2H, m), 1.04-1.17 (5H, m),  
1.62-1.74 (6H, m), 1.80-1.89 (1H, m), 2.80 (2H, d, J=6.6 Hz),  
3.81 (3H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 5.81 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 6.22 (1H,  
s), 6.33 (1H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 7.40 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz).

5

Part E: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(2-Alkyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(substituted  
methyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57

These compounds were prepared from 56, according to the  
10 procedure described for the synthesis of 34.

Preparation of

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-  
methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57a

15 Mp, 150-152 °C. 91% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3502, 3390,  
1759, 1695, 1630 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.40 (3H, s), 3.77  
(3H, s), 4.12 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 5.65 (1H, br.s), 6.23  
(1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.44 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz), 6.64 (1H, br.s),  
6.81 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 7.14-7.25  
20 (1H, m), 7.26-7.50 (7H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  
C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 70.48; H, 5.35; N, 6.09. Found: C,  
70.55; H, 5.37; N, 6.10.

Other Preparations:

25 2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-  
isopropylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57c. Mp, 124-130 °C.  
48.6% Yield.  
2-(2-t-Butyl-8-carbomethoxymethoxy-3-(o-  
phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57e. Mp, 206-207 °C  
30 (EtOAc). 77.6 % Yield.

2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-2-cyclopentyl-3-(o-  
phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57f. Mp, 119-121 °C  
(benzene). 77.6 % Yield.

-134-

2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57g. Mp, 204-205 °C (EtOAc). 11.5 % Yield.

5 2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57h. Mp, 260-262 °C (EtOAc). 73.7 % Yield.

Preparation of

2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57i

10 A mixture of the olefin (180 mg, 0.428 m mol) and 10% palladium-coal (13 mg) in ethyl acetate (15 ml) was stirred in hydrogen for 4 hours. The catalyst was filtered and washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate. Mp, 167 °C. 103 mg (56.9 %).

2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57j. Amorphous.

20 44.3 % Yield.

2-(8-Carbomethoxymethoxy-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 57k. Mp, 153-157 °C. 53.7% Yield.

25 Part F: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(2-Alkyl-8-(carbomethoxymethoxy)-3-(substituted methyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58

These compound was prepared by hydrolysis of 57 with lithium hydroxide cited above.

30

Other Preparations:

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-carboxymethoxy-2-methylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58a

35 Mp, 221-224 °C. 62.1% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3448, 3344, 1735, 1635(sh), 1615  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.40 (3H, s), 4.14 (2H, s), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, d,  $J=8.1$  Hz), 6.54 (1H,

-135-

t, J=6.9 Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.05-7.53 (8H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.5H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 69.17; H, 5.13; N, 6.20. Found: C, 69.07; H, 5.06; N, 6.17.

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-8-carbomethoxymethoxy-2-isopropylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58c. Mp, 139-141 °C. 59% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3462, 3382, 3292, 1737, 1686, 1639 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.32 (6H, d, J=7.0 Hz), 3.42 (1H, sept, J=7.0 Hz), 4.19 (2H, s), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.23 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.45 (1H, t, J=7.0 Hz), 6.69 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.91 (1H, br.s), 7.03-7.58 (11H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•1.3H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.09; H, 5.84; N, 5.67. Found: C, 68.02; H, 5.74; N, 5.65.

2-(2-t-Butyl-8-carboxymethoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58e  
Mp, 221-222 °C (EtOAc). Quantitative yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3417, 3378, 1732, 1679, 1650, 1542, 1305, 1238 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.39 (9H, s), 4.30 (2H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.09 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.38 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.08 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.17 (2H, m), 7.2-7.3 (2H, m), 7.35-7.5 (4H, m). Analyses: Calc'd: C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.6C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>: C, 73.68; H, 5.99; N, 5.27. Found: C, 73.53; H, 6.28; N, 5.04.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-cyclopentyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58f  
Mp, 147-148 °C (EtOAc). 73.4 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3428, 1739, 1655 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.65 (2H, m), 1.79 (4H, m), 1.97 (2H, m), 3.42 (1H, m), 4.16 (2H, s), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.29 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.48 (1H, t, J=6.6 Hz), 6.74 (1H, d, J=8.1 Hz), 7.05 (1H, br.s), 7.07 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 7.11 (1H, dt, J=7.5, 1.8 Hz), 7.18 (1H, br.s), 7.29 (2H, m), 7.4-7.55 (5H, m).

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(m-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58g

-136-

Mp, 241-244 °C (EtOAc). 73.5 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3314, 3180, 1702, 1600, 1492  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.26 (3H, t, J=7.3 Hz), 2.93 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.33 (2H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.37 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.59 (1H, t, J=7.6 Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.2 Hz), 7.3-7.6 (9H, m).

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58h

Mp, 222-224 °C (EtOAc). 71.3 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3429, 3334, 1728, 1644, 1619, 1501  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3+\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.23 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.85 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.79 (2H, d, J=5.4 Hz), 4.74 (2H, s), 6.23 (1H, dt, J=15.9, 5.4 Hz), 6.30-6.42 (2H, m), 6.67 (1H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 7.2-7.35 (5H, m), 7.65 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd:  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5$ : C, 67.97; H, 5.46; N, 6.89. Found: C, 67.84; H, 5.50; N, 6.82.

2-(8-Carboxymethoxy-2-ethyl-3-(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58i

Mp, 215-217 °C. 93.1 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3469, 3252, 1703, 1637, 1596, 1535, 1487  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.17 (3H, t, J=7.8 Hz), 1.91 (2H, m), 2.7-2.9 (6H, m), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.35 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.64 (1H, t, J=6.6 Hz), 7.2-7.45 (6H, m). Analyses: Calc'd:  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 66.46; H, 6.01; N, 6.74. Found: C, 66.32; H, 5.88; N, 6.72.

25

2-(8-carboxymethoxy-2-cyclopropyl-3-(1-naphthylmethyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58j

Mp, 205-207 °C (EtOAc). 70.7 % Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3439, 3341, 1737, 1648, 1621, 1597, 1495  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.48 (2H, m), 0.88 (2H, m), 2.13 (1H, m), 4.76 (2H, s), 4.81 (2H, s), 6.42 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz), 6.55 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.30 (1H, br.s), 7.07 (1H, br.s), 7.2-7.3 (2H, m), 7.55-7.7 (2H, m), 7.76 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.94 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 8.25 (1H, d, J=8.4 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd:  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 69.45; H, 5.11; N, 6.23. Found: C, 69.33; H, 5.14; N, 6.21.

-137-

2-(8-carboxymethoxyl-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-cyclopropylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 58k

Mp, 229-234 °C. 79% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3434, 3334, 1731, 1650(sh), 1620, 1593  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.41-0.46

5 (2H, m), 0.91-1.01 (2H, m), 1.08-1.79 (11H, m), 1.89-2.05 (1H, m), 2.85 (2H, d,  $J=6.6$  Hz), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.59 (1H, br.s), 6.71 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 7.00 (1H, br.s), 7.59 (1H, d,  $J=7.0$  Hz).

10 Part G-1: Preparation of

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl-8-(carboxymethyloxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide Sodium salt 59a

Mp, >250 °C. 86% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3240, 1644, 1496, 1409, 1277  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

15

Other Preparations:

2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-8-(1-methoxycarbonyloxyethoxycarbonylmethoxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59b

20 20% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3500, 3390, 1764, 1731, 1697, 1630  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-2-ethyl-8-(1-isopropylloxycarbonyloxyethoxycarbonylmethoxy)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59c. 44% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) 3674, 3500, 3390, 1755, 1693, 1631  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl-8-(t-butoxycarbonylmethyloxy carbonylmethyloxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59d. Mp, 102-104 °C. 36% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3408, 3306, 3169, 1771, 1692, 1672, 1630, 1603  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl-8-(1-cyclohexyloxycarbonylethoxy carbonylmethyloxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59e. Mp, 80-82 °C (dec). 35 57% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3471, 3356, 1753, 1693, 1630, 1496, 1261, 1077  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

-138-

- 2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-8-(1-cyclopentyloxycarbonyloxymethyloxy-carbamoanecarbonyl-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59f. Mp, 80-85 °C. 35%  
5 Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3666, 3498, 3390, 1754, 1694, 1629 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-8-(1-cyclopentyloxycarbonyloxymethyloxyethyloxycarbonylmethyloxy)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59g. Mp, 74-80 °C. 25%  
10 Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3674, 3500, 3390, 1760(sh), 1745, 1695, 1628 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-2-ethyl-8-(1-methylcyclopentyloxycarbonylethyloxycarbonylmethyloxy)-indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59h. 15.7% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 3500, 3390, 1772, 1737, 1694, 1631 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-2-ethyl-8-(2-morpholinoethyloxycarbonylmethyloxy)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59i. Mp, 113-120 °C (dec). 75% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3367, 1754, 1679, 1628, 1535, 1494, 1309, 1197 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-8-(carboxymethyloxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide diglycolate 59j  
25 Mp, 185-188 °C. 59% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3441, 3228, 1762, 1724, 1685, 1643, 1501, 1200 cm<sup>-1</sup>.
- 2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-2-ethyl-8-(2-oxopropylloxycarbonylmethoxy)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59k.  
30 Mp, 159-162 °C. 77% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3417, 3302, 3169, 1727, 1691, 1672, 1630, 1601, 1306 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

35 Part G-2: General Procedure for Preparation of

-139-

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-8-(substituted  
methyloxy)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59l-p

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl)-2-ethyl-8-  
(hydroxymethyloxy)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 36d was treated  
5 with the same procedure of the preparation of 51 from 50.

Other Preparations:

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-2-ethyl-8-(1-tritytretrazol(-5-  
yl)methyloxy)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59l

10 Mp, 119-121 °C. 66% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3439, 3363,  
3166, 1734, 1685, 1607, 1495, 1249  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-2-ethyl-8-(1H-tetracol-5-  
ylmethyloxy)indolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 59m. Mp, 206-209 °C  
15 (dec). 60% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3488, 3437, 3322, 1681,  
1631, 1530, 1496, 1309  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-2-methyl-8-(pyridin-2-ylmethoxy)-  
indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 59n. Mp, 196-197 °C (hexane-  
AcOEt). 4.2% Yield.

20 2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-2-methyl-8-(pyridin-4-ylmethoxy)-  
indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 59o. Mp, 195-197 °C (hexane-  
AcOEt). 3.4% Yield.

25 2-(3-Biphenyl-2-ylmethyl-2-methyl-8-(quinolin-2-ylmethoxy)-  
indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 59p. Mp, 165-167 °C (hexane-  
AcOEt). 3.4% Yield.

Example 7

30 Part A: Preparation of 2-Ethyl-7-methoxyindolizine 61a and  
2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxyindolizine 61b

4-Methoxypicoline was treated with the same procedure of  
the preparation of 45 from 44.

35 61a: 29.4% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 2962, 1648  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.27 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.67 (2H, q, J=7.4 Hz),  
3.77 (3H, s), 6.06 (1H, s), 6.14 (1H, dd, J=7.6, 2.6 Hz),

-140-

6.52 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 6.94 (1H, s), 7.66 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz).  
m/z 175.0982 [M]<sup>+</sup>.

61b: Mp, 101-102 °C (hexane). 27.3% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 5 3073, 3059, 2994, 2963, 2939, 2829, 1649 cm<sup>-1</sup>.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  3.76 (3H, s), 5.12 (1H, s), 6.13 (1H, dd, J=2.7, 7.2 Hz), 6.49 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=1.2 Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=7.2 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}$ : C, 76.98; H, 7.00; N, 7.48. Found: C, 76.81; H, 7.09; N, 7.47.

10

Part B: Preparation of 2-Alkyl-7-methoxy-3-(substituted carbonyl)indolizine 62

Indolizine compound 61 was converted to 62 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 18 from 17

15 3-Benzoyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolizine 62a Mp, 105-106 °C (hexane). 70.5% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3057, 2966, 2926, 2868, 1645 cm<sup>-1</sup>.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.02 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.17 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.88 (3H, s), 6.23 (1H, s), 6.54 (1H, dd, J=2.7, 7.8 Hz), 6.72 (1H, d, J=2.1 Hz), 7.40-7.49 (3H, m), 7.56-7.60 (2H, m), 9.67 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{17}\text{NO}_2 \cdot 0.5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 74.98; H, 6.29; N, 4.86. Found: C, 74.77; H, 6.10; N, 5.02.

Other Preparations:

25 2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 62b. A yellow oil. Quantitative yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.48 -0.69 (2H, m), 1.11 (1H, m), 3.82 (3H, s), 5.71 (1H, s), 6.45 (1H, dd, J=2.8, 7.6 Hz), 6.57 (1H, d, J=2.6 Hz), 7.15-7.54 (9H, m), 9.76 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz).

30 2-Ethyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzoyl)indolizine 62c  
Mp, 140-141 °C (ether). 90.2% Yield.

3-Cyclohexylcarbonyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolizine 62d  
Mp, 112-113 °C (hexane). 41.1% Yield.

35 Part C: Preparation of 2-Alkyl-7-methoxy-3-(substituted methyl)indolizine 63

-141-

Indolizine compound 62 was converted to 63 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 48 from 47.

Other Preparations:

5 3-Benzyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolizine 63a

Amorphous solid. 22.0% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3002, 2956, 2926, 1646  $cm^{-1}$ .

2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 63b

10 Mp, 109-110 °C (hexane). 44.3% Yield.

2-Ethyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine 63c.

Mp, 100-101 °C (hexane). 39.2% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 2964, 2927, 1645  $cm^{-1}$ .

15

3-Cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolizine 63d

Amorphous yellow solid. 48.2% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 2988, 2956, 2920, 2846, 1645  $cm^{-1}$ .

20

Part D: Preparation of (2-Alkyl-7-methoxy-3-(substituted methyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 64

Indolizine compound 63 was converted to 64 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 49 from 48.

25

Other Preparations:

2-(3-Benzyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 64a

Amorphous solid. 78.9% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3500, 3386, 3004, 2962, 1689, 1644, 1601  $cm^{-1}$ . <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  1.23 (3H,

30 dt, J=7.5, 1.2 Hz), 2.98 (2H, q, J=7.8 Hz), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.21 (2H, s), 5.57 (1H, br.s), 6.42 (1H, dd, J=2.7, 7.5 Hz), 6.79 (1H, br.s), 7.08 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.21 (3H, m), 7.51 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz).

-142-

2-(2-Cyclopropyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 64b. Mp, 194-195 °C (benzene-hexane). 50.1% Yield.

5 2-(2-Ethyl-7-methoxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 64c. Mp, 101-106 °C (benzene-hexane). 75.9% Yield.

10 2-(3-Cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethyl-7-methoxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 64d. Mp, 178-180 °C (THF-hexane). 50.4% Yield.

15 Part E: Preparation of 2-(2-Alkyl-7-hydroxy-3-(substituted methyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 65

Indolizine compound 64 was converted to 65 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 50 from 49.

Other Preparations:

20 2-(3-Benzyl-2-ethyl-7-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 65a  
BBr<sub>3</sub> method. An amorphous solid: 49% Yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.11 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.86 (2H, t, J=7.2 Hz),  
4.24 (2H, s), 6.52 (1H, dd, J=2.1, 7.5 Hz), 7.08-7.30 (6H,  
m), 7.43 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 7.51 (1H, s), 7.92 (1H, d, J=6.9  
Hz), 7.98 (1H, s).

25 2-(2-Cyclopropyl-7-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 65b. Amorphous solid. 12.6% Yield. <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.50-0.54 (2H, m), 0.86-0.91 (2H, m), 2.26 (1H, m),  
4.21 (2H, s), 6.40 (1H, dd, J=2.4, 7.2 Hz), 6.79 (1H, d,  
J=8.0 Hz), 7.08-7.51 (9H, m), 7.67 (1H, d, J=2.8 Hz).  
30 2-(2-Ethyl-7-hydroxy-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 65c. Mp, 125-129 °C (benzene-hexane).  
36.9% Yield.  
35 2-(3-Cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethyl-7-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 65d

-143-

Amorphous solid. 28.0% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3 + \text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  1.00-1.20 (5H, m), 1.17 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 1.44-1.76 (6H, m), 2.64 (2H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 2.83 (2H, m), 6.60 (1H, dd,  $J=2.1$ , 6.9 Hz), 7.49 (1H, br.s), 7.77 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz).

5

Part F: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(2-Alkyl-7-(3-carbethoxypropyloxy)-3-(substituted  
methyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 66

Indolizine compound 65 was converted to 66 by the same  
10 procedure cited for the preparation of 51 from 50.

Other Preparations:

2-(3-Benzyl-7-(3-carbethoxypropyloxy)-2-ethylindolin-1-  
yl)glyoxylamide 66a

15 Mp, 146-149 °C. 54.8% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3430, 3170,  
2958, 2928, 1731, 1674, 1645  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.22 (3H,  
t,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 1.25 (3H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 2.13 (2H, m), 2.49 (2H,  
q,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 2.97 (2H, q,  $J=7.5$  Hz), 4.08 (2H, t,  $J=6.3$  Hz),  
4.14 (2H, q,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 4.21 (2H, s), 5.56 (1H, br.s), 6.40  
20 (1H, dd,  $J=2.7$ , 7.2 Hz), 6.78 (1H, br.s), 7.08 (2H, d,  $J=7.8$   
Hz), 7.21-7.29 (3H, m), 7.50 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 7.78 (1H, d,  
 $J=2.7$  Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 68.23;  
H, 6.50; N, 6.37. Found: C, 68.30; H, 6.52; N, 6.52.

25 2-(7-(3-Carbethoxypropyloxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-  
phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 66b. Amorphous  
solid. 84.2% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.47-0.52 (2H, m), 0.85-  
0.91 (2H, m), 1.25 (3H, t,  $J=6.9$  Hz), 2.08-2.17 (3H, m), 2.48  
(2H, td,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 4.06 (2H, t,  $J=6.3$  Hz), 4.14 (2H, q,  
30  $J=6.9$  Hz), 4.23 (2H, s), 5.52 (1H, br.s), 6.35 (1H, dd,  
 $J=2.7$ , 7.5 Hz), 6.58 (1H, br.s), 6.67 (1H, d,  $J=7.2$  Hz),  
7.11-7.54 (9H, m), 7.72 (1H, d,  $J=2.1$  Hz).

2-(7-(3-Carbethoxypropyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-  
35 phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 66c. Mp, 131-133  
°C (benzene-hexane). 70.9% Yield.

-144-

2-(7-(3-Carbethoxypropyloxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethyl-hydroxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 66d. Mp, 150-151 °C (THF-hexane). 87.0% Yield.

5

Part G: General Procedure for Preparation of  
2-(2-Alkyl-7-(3-carboxypropyloxy)-3-(substituted  
methyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 67

Indolizine compound 66 was converted to 67 by the same  
10 procedure cited for the preparation of 52 from 51.

Other Preparations:

2-(3-Benzyl-7-(3-carboxylpropyloxy)-2-ethylindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 67a

15 Mp, 178-183 °C (dec.). 77.0% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3700-2400, 3085, 2925, 1710, 1644  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.22 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.14 (2H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 2.97 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.11 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 4.20 (2H, s), 6.38 (1H, br.s), 6.41 (1H, dd, J=7.2, 2.4 Hz), 6.96 (2H, br.s), 7.08 (2H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.23-7.26 (3H, m), 7.51 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.75 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{23}\text{H}_{24}\text{N}_2\text{O}_3 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 66.75; H, 5.99; N, 6.77. Found: C, 66.71; H, 5.91; N, 6.77.

2-(7-(3-Carboxypropyloxy)-2-cyclopropyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 67b. Mp, 112-121 °C, (dec.). 69.6% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3700-2400, 3081, 3019, 2927, 1710, 1644  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.50 (2H, m), 0.88 (2H, m), 2.49 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 4.10 (2H, m), 4.23 (2H, s), 6.37 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.11-7.54 (9H, m), 7.74 (1H, s). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 1.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 69.54; H, 5.91; N, 5.41. Found: C, 69.43; H, 5.93; N, 5.35.

2-(7-(3-Carboxypropyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 67c

35 Mp, 112-116 °C (dec.). 67.0% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3700-2400, 2967, 2931, 1709, 1644  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.19 (3H,

-145-

t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.17 (2H, br.t), 2.53 (2H, br.t), 2.92 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.07 (2H, br.s), 6.35 (1H, dd, J=1.8, 7.5 Hz), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.98 (1H, br.s), 7.12-7.31 (4H, m), 7.42-7.53 (5H, m), 7.70 (1H, br.s). Analyses: Calc'd for 5 C<sub>29</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.9H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 69.56; H, 6.00; N, 5.59. Found: C, 69.57; H, 5.87; N, 5.44.

**2-(7-(3-Caboxypropyloxy)-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-ethyl-hydroxyindolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 67d**

10 Mp, 201-202.5 °C. 92.4% Yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (KBr) 3700-2400, 2923, 2849, 1716, 1646 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 0.95-1.19 (5H, m), 1.17 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.43-1.75 (6H, m), 2.14 (2H, m), 2.53 (2H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.65 (2H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 2.86 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.12 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 6.57 (2H, dd, J=2.4, 7.5 Hz), 7.68 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 7.75 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.3H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 65.79; H, 7.34; N, 6.67. Found: C, 65.83; H, 7.36; N, 6.78.

**Part H-1: Preparation of**

20 **2-(7-(Carboxymethylenoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 69, 70, 71**  
1) Indolizine compound 50a or 65c was converted to 68 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 51 from 50.

25 **Other Preparations:**

**2-(8-(3-Carbomethoxypropyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 68a**

Mp, 126-127 °C. 42% Yield. IR ν<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 3396, 3221, 1737, 1725, 1698, 1639, 1310, 1188 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.13-1.34 (6H, m), 2.17 (2H, quint., J=6.9 Hz), 2.54 (2H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 2.79 (2H, q, J=7.6 Hz), 4.03-4.20 (6H, m), 5.66 (1H, br.s), 6.31 (1H, d, J=7.4 Hz), 6.46 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.70-6.84 (2H, m), 7.02 (1H, d, J=6.4 Hz), 7.08-7.20 (1H, m), 7.21-7.35 (2H, m), 7.37-7.58 (5H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for 35 C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>32</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>•0.5H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 71.38; H, 6.38; N, 5.37. Found: C, 71.12; H, 6.57; N, 5.00.

-146-

2-(7-(Carboethoxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 68b. Mp, 119-121 °C (THF-hexane). 86.6% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3434, 3356, 3180, 5 3060, 2969, 2929, 1765, 1682, 1643, 1627  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.20 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 1.32 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.94 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.09 (2H, s), 4.29 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.66 (2H, s), 5.50 (1H, br.s), 6.48 (1H, dd, J=2.4, 7.5 Hz), 6.77 (1H, br.s), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.75 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz).  
10 Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 71.09; H, 5.88; N, 5.72. Found: C, 71.11; H, 6.02; N, 5.86.

2-(7-(5-Carboethoxypentyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 68c.  
15 Mp, 122-123 °C (MeOH-Et<sub>2</sub>O-hexane). 81.0% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3406, 3351, 3207, 2967, 2931, 2871, 1724, 1684, 1645  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.20 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.77-1.85 (4H, m), 2.37 (2H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 2.93 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.03 (2H, t, J=5.8 Hz), 4.08 (2H, s), 4.12 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 5.57 (1H, br.s), 6.35 (1H, dd, J=2.7, 7.5 Hz), 6.76 (1H, br.s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.12-7.32 (4H, m), 7.40-7.54 (5H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{34}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 72.24; H, 6.55; N, 5.27. Found: C, 72.16; H, 6.55; N, 5.40.

25  
2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-8-(carboxypropyloxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 69a  
Mp, 185-187 °C. 71% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3475, 1729, 1666, 1628, 1497, 1308  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.19 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.19 (2H, quint., J=7.3 Hz), 2.51 (2H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.80 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.04-4.16 (4H, m), 6.34 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.48 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.94-7.06 (2H, m), 7.10-7.19 (1H, m), 7.22-7.34 (2H, m), 7.38-7.55 (6H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 71.09; H, 5.88; N, 5.72. Found: C, 70.87; H, 5.83; N, 5.75.

-147-

2-(7-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 69b

Mp, 226 °C (dec.). 81.0% Yield.

5 2-(7-(5-Carboxypentyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 69c

Mp, 84-94 °C (dec.). 72.0% Yield.

- 10 2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-8-(carboxyethoxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 70a. Mp, 185-187 °C. 11% Yield. IR  $\nu_{max}$  (nujol) 3388, 3215, 1730, 1644, 1600, 1585, 1498  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  0.99 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.63 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 2.81 (2H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 4.16 (2H, s), 4.23 (2H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 6.56-6.63 (2H, m), 6.67 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 7.13-7.22 (1H, m), 7.24-7.34 (3H, m), 7.35-7.49 (2H, m), 7.50-7.59 (4H, m), 7.63 (1H, br.s).

Other Preparations:

20 2-(7-(2-Carboethoxyethoxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 70b

Propiolactone (25 mg, 0.336 m mol) was added dropwise to a solution of 65c (133.7 mg, 0.336 m mol) and potassium t-butoxide (37.6 mg, 0.336 m mol) in tetrahydrofuran (4 ml) under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred for 21 hr. Water was added. The mixture was washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous phase was acidified with hydrochloric acid. The precipitate was collected with filtration to give 70b, 96.2 mg (60.9%). Mp, 99-108 °C (dec.). IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3700-2400, 3182, 2968, 2931, 1719, 1677, 1644  $cm^{-1}$ .  $^1H$  NMR ( $CDCl_3$ )  $\delta$  1.19 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.80 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 2.92 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 4.08 (2H, s), 4.30 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 6.35 (1H, dd, J=2.7, 7.8 Hz), 6.84 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 7.12-7.53 (9H, m), 7.72 (1H, d, J=2.7 Hz). Analyses: Calc'd for  $C_{28}H_{26}N_2O_5 \cdot 1.2H_2O$ : C, 68.34; H, 5.82; N, 5.69. Found: C, 68.40; H, 5.76; N, 5.43.

-148-

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl-methyl)-8-(2-carbomethoxyethoxy)-2-ethylindolizine-1-yl)glyoxylamide 70c

Mp, 159-162 °C. 6% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3434, 3323, 1739, 1709, 1621, 1497  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.18 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.79 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 2.89 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 3.73 (3H, s), 4.11 (2H, s), 4.36 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 5.45 (1H, br.s), 6.36 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.48 (1H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 6.70 (1H, br.s), 6.78 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=6.9 Hz), 7.11-7.19 (1H, m), 7.22-7.33 (2H, m), 7.39-7.55 (5H, m).

Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_5 \cdot 0.3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 71.09; H, 5.88; N, 5.72. Found: C, 70.93; H, 6.05; N, 5.50.

Part H-2: Preparation of

2-(7-(3-Carbethoxypropyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)acetamide 71a

Borane-t-butylamine complex (125 mg, 1.44 m mol) was added to a mixture of aluminumtrichloride (13 mg, 0.097 m mol) in toluene (10 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min. A solution of the glyoxylamide (66c, 246 mg, 0.48 m mol) in toluene (5 ml) was added to the solution. The solution was heated at 60 °C for 2 hours. After cooling the solution was poured to ice-cold dilute hydrochloric acid. The mixture was extracted with dichloromethane. The extracts were washed with water, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel in ethyl acetate:hexane (4:1) and recrystallized from hexane, 190 mg (79.4%). Mp, 128-130 °C.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 3458, 3132, 2964, 2932, 1730, 1682, 1648  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.11 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 1.26 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.10 (2H, m), 2.48 (2H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.59 (2H, q, J=7.5 Hz), 3.64 (2H, s), 3.94 (2H, t, J=6.3 Hz), 4.10 (2H, s), 4.14 (1H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 5.42 (1H, br.s), 5.63 (1H, br.s), 6.06 (1H, dd, J=7.5, 2.4 Hz), 6.44 (1H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 6.68 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.07-7.51 (9H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for

-149-

C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>•0.6H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 73.09; H, 6.96; N, 5.50. Found: C, 73.05; H, 7.00; N, 5.49.

**Preparation of**

- 5 2-(7-(3-Carboxypropyloxy)-2-ethyl-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)acetamide 71b  
Mp, 105-120 °C (dec.). 62.0% Yield.

Example 8

10

**Part A: Preparation of**

Diethyl 2-(3-benzyloxypyridinium)-3-thioniumhept-4-thia-2-enoate 73

A solution of benzyloxypyridine (21.73 g, 0.117 mole)  
15 and ethyl bromoacetate (19.6 g, 0.117 mole) in benzene (85 ml) was stirred at 65 °C for 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was washed with ethyl acetate. A solution of aqueous sodium hydroxide (11.80 g, 0.295 mole, 35 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of the residue,  
20 carbon disulfide (10.8 g, 0.142 mole), water (24 ml) and ethanol (120 ml). The mixture was stirred for 30 min. Ethyl acrylate (11.8 g, 0.118 mole) was added dropwise. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour. Ice-water was added. The solid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried (10.9 g, 25 20.8%) and recrystallized from chloroform-ether. Mp, 162-164 °C.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1719, 1644 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.16 (3H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 1.26 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.80 (2H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 3.58 (2H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 4.13 (2H, q, J=6.9 Hz), 4.15 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 5.21 (2H, s), 7.42 (5H, s), 7.73 (1H, dd, J=9.0, 6.0 Hz), 7.87 (1H, ddd, J=8.7, 2.4, 1.2 Hz), 8.12 (1H, dt, J=6.0, 1.2 Hz), 8.22 (1H, dd, J=2.1, 0.9 Hz). Analyses:  
30 Calc'd for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S<sub>2</sub>•0.05CHCl<sub>3</sub>•0.3H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 57.51; H, 5.63;  
N, 3.05; S, 13.97; Cl, 1.16. Found: C, 57.59; H, 5.52; N,  
35 3.18; S, 14.08; Cl, 1.14.

-150-

Part B: Preparation of

Triethyl 8- and 6-benzyloxy-1,3-dicarbethoxy-2-(2-carbethoxyethylthio)indolizine 74a+74b

A solution of ethyl bromoacetate (2.70 g, 16.2 m mol)  
5 and the salt (73, 6.03 g, 13.5 m mol) in chloroform (40 ml)  
was allowed to stand for 3 days and cooled in ice. A solution  
of DBU (2.47 g, 16.2 m mol) and chloranil (3.32 g, 13.5 m  
mol) were added. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 6 hours  
10 and chromatographed on silica gel (120 g) in chloroform to  
give a ca. 10:1 mixture of 62a and 62b, (6.0 g, 89.1%) as an  
oil.

Part C: Preparation of

Diethyl 8- and 6-benzyloxy-1,3-dicarbethoxy-2-  
15 mercaptoindolizine 75a and 75b

Potassium t-butoxide (2.73 g, 24.3 m mol) was added in  
small portions to a solution of the ester (74a+b 9.88 g, 19.8  
m mol) in DMF (25 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was  
stirred at 50 °C for 5 hours. Ice-water and then dilute  
20 hydrochloric acid were added. The mixture was extracted with  
ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water, dried  
(Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue  
was chromatographed on silica gel (200 g) in hexane:ethyl  
acetate (2:1). Both fractions of larger and smaller R<sub>f</sub> values  
25 were crystallized from benzene-hexane.

Preparation of 75a: The fraction of the larger R<sub>f</sub> value: Mp,  
125-127 °C. 1.12 g (16.7%). IR ν<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 1661, 1508 cm<sup>-1</sup>.  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.46 (3H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 1.48 (3H, t, J=7.5  
30 Hz), 4.42 (2H, q, J=6.9 Hz), 4.46 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 5.09  
(2H, s), 7.04 (1H, s), 7.15 (1H, dd, J=9.9, 2.4 Hz), 7.3-7.55  
(5H, m), 8.09 (1H, dd, J=9.6, 0.6 Hz), 9.41 (1H, s).  
Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>S: C, 63.14; H, 5.30; N, 3.51;  
S, 8.03. Found: C, 62.98; H, 5.42; N, 3.50; S, 7.97.

-151-

Preparation of 75b: The fraction of the smaller R<sub>f</sub> value: Mp,  
81-82 °C. 4.59 g (58.1%). IR ν<sub>max</sub> (nujol) 1686, 1655, 1543,  
1493 cm<sup>-1</sup>.

5 Part D: Preparation of

Diethyl 8-benzyloxy-1,3-dicarbethoxy-2-methylthioindolizine  
76

76: 60% Sodium hydride (76 mg) was added to a solution  
of the thiol (75a, 690 mg, 1.73 m mol) in DMF (4 ml) with  
10 cooling in ice under nitrogen. A solution of iodomethane (295  
mg, 2.08 m mol) in DMF (1 ml) was added dropwise to the  
mixture with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at room  
temperature for 2 hours, acidified with dilute hydrochloric  
acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were  
15 washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under  
reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica  
gel in hexane:ethyl acetate (5:1 to 3:2) to give an oil 732  
mg (quantitative yield).

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 1.13 (3H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 1.45 (3H, t,  
20 J=7.2 Hz), 2.47 (3H, s), 4.00 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 4.45 (2H, q,  
J=7.5 Hz), 5.13 (2H, s), 6.46 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.70 (1H, t  
J=7.2 Hz), 7.3-7.5 (5H, m), 9.06 (1H, dd, J=6.9, 0.6 Hz).

Part E: Preparation of 8- and 6-Benzylxy-2-  
25 methylthioindolizine 78

10% Aqueous potassium hydroxide (5 ml) was added to a  
solution of the diester (76, 337 mg, 0.815 m mol) in DMSO (5  
ml). The mixture was heated under reflux for 8 hours. After  
cooling, the mixture was acidified with dilute hydrochloric  
30 acid with cooling in ice and extracted with ethyl acetate.  
The extracts were washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and  
concentrated under reduced pressure to give a mixture of 77  
and 78.

The solid in toluene (5 ml) was heated under reflux for  
35 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue  
was chromatographed on silica gel (25 g) in hexane:ethyl

-152-

acetate (5:1) and crystallized from hexane, 191 mg (87.0%).

Mp, 94 °C.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1541, 750  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.47 (3H, s), 5.17 (3H, s), 6.03 (1H, d,  $J=7.4$  Hz), 6.34 (1H, t,  $J=7.2$  Hz), 6.61 (1H, dd,  $J=1.8, 1.0$  Hz), 7.22 (1H, d,  $J=1.6$  Hz), 7.3-7.5 (6H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{15}\text{NOS} \cdot 0.05\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ : C, 71.80; H, 5.43; N, 5.14 S, 11.76. Found: C, 71.83; H, 5.83; N, 5.08; S, 11.78.

10 **Part F:** Preparation of

2-(8- and 6-Benzylxy-2-methylthio-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 80

80: A solution of 2-iodomethylbiphenyl (197 mg, 0.676 m mol) and the indolizine (78, 191 mg, 0.644 m mol) in benzene (2 ml) was allowed to stand at room temperature for 3 days. Aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (25 g) in hexane:ethyl acetate to give a mixture of 8-benzylxy-2-methylthio-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolizine, 79 and the starting material, 265 mg. A solution of the residue in tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) was added dropwise to a solution of oxalyl chloride (0.5 ml) in tetrahydrofuran (1 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred for 30 min and added dropwise to concentrated ammonium hydroxide (10 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. Ethyl acetate was added. The insoluble materials were removed by filtration. The organic phase was separated from the filtrate, washed with water, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (25 g) in hexane:ethyl acetate (1:1) and crystallized from benzene:hexane, 96 mg (28.5% from 78), Mp, 199-201 °C.

35 IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3419, 3160, 1703, 1640, 1498  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.42 (3H, s), 4.40 (2H, s), 4.77 (1H, br.s),

-153-

5.10 (2H, s), 6.28 (1H, br.s), 6.33 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.44  
(1H, t, J=6.6 Hz), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=6.0  
Hz), 7.15 (1H, dt, J=7.2, 1.8 Hz), 7.2-7.55 (12H, m).

Analyses: Calc'd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>S: C, 73.50; H, 5.17; N, 5.53

5 S, 6.33. Found: C, 73.65; H, 5.21; N, 5.45; S, 6.18.

Part G: Preparation of

2-(8-(Carbomethoxymethoxy)-2-methylthio-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 82

10 81: 1N-Solution of borontribromide in dichloromethane (0.7 ml, 0.7 m mol) was added to a solution of the benzylether (80, 85 mg, 0.168 m mol) in dichloromethane (1 ml) with cooling in ice. The mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour. Ice-water was added. The mixture was extracted with 15 dichloromethane:methanol. The extracts were washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate, mp, 138-142 °C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>+CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 2.31 (3H, s), 4.41 (2H, s), 6.65-

20 6.80 (3H, m), 7.01 (1H, dd, J=6.2, 1.2 Hz), 7.17 (1H, m), 7.3-7.6 (7H, m).

82: A mixture of the crystals 81, methyl bromoacetate (33 mg, 0.216 m mol), potassium carbonate (90 mg, 0.65 m mol) 25 and a few piece of potassium iodide in DMF (1.2 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. Water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were washed with water, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was chromatographed on silica 30 gel (10 g) in ethyl acetate and crystallized from benzene:hexane, 35 mg (41.3%). Mp, 88-91 °C.

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 2.44 (3H, s), 3.77 (3H, s), 4.41 (2H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 5.69 (1H, br.s), 6.20 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.44 (1H, t, J=6.9 Hz), 6.79 (1H, br.s), 6.79 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J=7.5 Hz), 7.16 (1H, dt, J=7.5, 1.8 Hz), 35 7.1-7.55 (7H, m).

Preparation of 81b: Mp, 271-273 °C (dec.). 86.5% Yield.

Preparation of

- 5 2-(8-(Carboxymethoxy)-2-methylthio-3-(o-phenylbenzyl)indolin-1yl)-glyoxylamide 83  
83: Mp, 200-205 °C. 65.4% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3392, 3220, 1745, 1620, 1305  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

10 Preparation of

3-(N-Benzylloxycarbonyl)-2-methylpyridine 85

- A mixture of 3-aminopicoline (84, 0.60 g, 5.5 m mol), (N-benzylloxycarbonyl)succinimide (2.1 g, 8.3 m mol) and DMF (2 ml) was left for 2 days. The reaction mixture was poured 15 into water, extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). The solvent was removed in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate - hexane to give 85 (0.92 g, 68 %), mp, 76-78 °C. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1725, 1551, 1227, 1061  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  20 2.49 (3H, s), 5.22 (3H, s), 7.16 (1H, m),  $J=8.7$  Hz), 7.36- 7.45 (5H, m), 8.15-8.27 (2H, m). Analyses: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{14}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$ : C, 69.41; H, 5.82; N, 11.56. Found: C, 69.62; H, 5.89; N, 11.31.

25

Example 9

Part A: Preparation of

3-(N-Benzylloxycarbonyl-N-methoxycarbonylmethyl)amino-2-methylpyridine 86

- 30 To a suspension of sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 0.17 g, 4.2 m mol) in DMF (3 ml) was added 85 (0.92 g, 3.8 m mol) in DMF (5 ml) at 0°C with stirring under a nitrogen atmosphere. Stirring was continued for 1 hour, at which time methyl bromoacetate (0.40 ml, 4.2 m mol) was 35 added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for an additional 2.5 hours. The reaction mixture was poured

-155-

into water, extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). The solvent was removed in vacuo. The product was purified by silica gel column chromatography eluting with ethyl acetate:hexane (1:1) to yield 86 (1.07 g,

5 90%) as a yellow oil,

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.43 (3/4H, s), 2.51 (1/4H, m), 3.68 (1/4H, m), 3.76 (3/4H, s), 3.85 (1H, d,  $J=18$  Hz), 4.69 (1H, d,  $J=18$  Hz), 5.06-5.21 (3/2H, m), 5.22 (1/2H, s), 7.13-7.37 (6H, m), 7.73 (1H, m), 8.45 (1H, m).

10

Part B: Preparation of

3-Benzyl-8-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-*N*-methoxycarbonylmethyl)amino-2-methyl-indolizine 87a

Compound 86 was converted to 87a by the same procedure

15 cited for the preparation of 31 from 29 and 24. 42% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.34 (3H, s), 3.67-3.77 (3H, m), 4.21-4.46 (4H, m), 5.15 (2/3H, s), 5.25 (1/3H, s), 6.28-6.37 (2H, m), 6.77 (1H, m), 7.04-7.50 (11H, m).

20 Preparation of 8-(*N*-Benzylloxycarbonyl-*N*-

methoxycarbonylmethyl)amino-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methyl-indolizine 87b

31% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  0.82-1.80 (11H, m), 2.25 (3H, s), 2.70 (2H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 3.66 (3/4H, s), 3.74 (9/4H, s), 4.10-4.55 (2H, m), 5.15 (3/2H, s), 5.23 (1/2H, s), 6.19 (3/4H, s), 6.23 (1/4H, s), 6.43 (1H, m), 6.73 (3/4H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 6.79 (1/4H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 7.12-7.42 (5H, m), 7.64 (1H, d,  $J=7$  Hz).

30 Part C: Preparation of

2-(3-Benzyl-8-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-*N*-methoxycarbonylmethyl)amino-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 88a

Compound 87a was converted to 88a by the same procedure

35 cited for the preparation of 34 from 28. 66% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  2.44 (1H, s), 2.45 (2H, s), 3.67 (1H, s), 3.73 (2H,

-156-

s), 3.80 (1H, d, J=18 Hz), 4.24 (2H, s), 4.71 (1H, d, J=18 Hz), 5.00-5.31 (2H, m), 6.64 (1H, m), 7.04-7.42 (11H, m), 7.62 (1H, m).

5 Preparation of

2-(8-(*N*-benzyloxycarbonyl-*N*-methoxycarbonylmethyl)amino-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 88b  
72% Yield.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.00-1.26 (4H, m), 1.50-1.78

(7H, m), 2.32 (1H, s), 2.33 (2H, s), 2.70 (2H, d, J=7 Hz), 3.67 (1H, s), 3.73 (2H, s), 3.78 (2/3H, d, J=18 Hz), 3.79 (1/3H, d, J=18 Hz), 4.60 (1/3H, d, J=18 Hz), 4.69 (2/3H, d, J=18 Hz), 5.03 (2/3H, d, J=13 Hz), 5.19 (1/3H, d, J=13 Hz), 5.23 (2/3H, d, J=13 Hz), 5.25 (1/3H, d, J=13 Hz), 6.73 (2/3H, t, J=7 Hz), 6.79 (1/3H, t, J=7 Hz), 7.14-7.43 (6H, m), 7.79 (1H, m).

Part D: Preparation of

2-(3-Benzyl-8-methoxycarbonylmethylamino-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 89a

20 A mixture of the indolizine (88a, 88 mg, 0.17 m mol) and 10% palladium-coal (0.02 g) in ethyl acetate (5 ml) was stirred in hydrogen atmosphere for 3 hours. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. Crystallization of the residue from tetrahydrofuran-ether afforded 89a (51 mg, 78%). Mp, 186-188 °C. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3410, 3149, 1750, 1689, 1566, 1221  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Preparation of

2-(8-methoxycarbonylmethylamino-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 89b  
30 Mp, 173-177 °C. (methanol:ether:hexane). 90% Yield.

Part E: Preparation of

2-(3-Benzyl-8-carboxymethylamino-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 90a  
35

-157-

Compound 89a was converted to 90a by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 52 from 51. Mp, 293 °C (dec.) (methanol:ether). 61% Yield.

IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 1722, 1670, 1621, 1535, 1219  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  2.56 (3H, s), 4.43 (2H, s), 4.87 (2H, s), 7.10-7.36 (7H, m), 8.23 (1H, d,  $J=7$  Hz).

Preparation of

2-(8-Carboxymethylamino-3-cyclohexylmethyl-2-methyl-  
10 indolizin-1-yl)-glyoxylamide 90b

Mp, >300 °C. (methanol:ether). 47% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3450, 1656, 1623, 1604, 1524  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  0.95-1.35 (5H, m), 1.51-1.80 (6H, m), 2.43 (3H, s), 2.85 (2H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 4.42 (2H, s), 7.00 (1H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 7.12 (1H, t,  $J=7$  Hz), 8.32 (1H, d,  $J=7$  Hz). IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (KBr) 1722, 1670, 1621, 1535, 1219  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

Part F: Preparation of

2-(3-Benzyl-8-methoxycarbonylmethylamino-2-methyl-indolizin-  
20 1-yl)-acetamide 91

Compound 88a was converted to 91 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 71a from 66c. Mp, 147-150 °C (dec.) (ethanol:ether:hexane). 55% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3450, 3151, 1747, 1691, 1221  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

25

Part G: Preparation of

2-(3-Benzyl-8-carboxymethylamino-2-methyl-indolizin-1-yl)-  
acetamide 92

Compound 91 was converted to 92 by the same procedure cited for the preparation of 52 from 51. 60% Yield. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (nujol) 3431, 3303, 1714, 1670, 1545, 1141  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .

$^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $d_6$ -DMSO)  $\delta$  2.31 (3H, s), 3.79-3.90 (2H, m), 4.19 (2H, s), 5.36 (1H, s), 5.49 (1H, d,  $J=7$  Hz), 6.29 (1H, t,  $J=7$  Hz), 7.00-7.27 (7H, m).

35

Part H: Preparation of

-158-

**8-Benzylxyloxy-1-carboethoxy-2-methoxyindolizine 94**

A mixture of (1) (1g, 3.69 m mol) and methyl bromoacetate (10 ml) was stirred at 50°C for 18 hours in nitrogen. Diethyl ether was added to the reaction mixture.

5 The insoluble oil was washed with diethyl ether and dried at a reduced pressure. A mixture of the pyridinium salt and potassium carbonate (4.2g, 36.85 m mol) was stirred in 2-butanol (17 ml) at room temperature for 4 hours. Dimethyl sulfate (2.5 ml, 26.38 m mol) in 2-butanol (3 ml) was added, 10 then the mixture was heated to 60 °C. Water was added. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at a reduced pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel in hexane / ethyl acetate = 5 / 1. 382 mg (32 % yield) of the 15 title compound was obtained. IR  $\nu_{\text{max}}$  (Neat) 2970, 1693, 1555, 1527, 1452, 1370, 1304  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  1.11 (3H, t,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.12 (2H, q,  $J=7.0$  Hz), 5.15 (2H, s), 6.30 (1H, d,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 6.46 (1H, dd,  $J=6.6$ ,  $J=7.8$  Hz), 7.26-7.54 (5H, m).

20

**Part I: Preparation of**

**2-(8-Benzylxyloxy-3-(biphenyl-2-yl)-2-methoxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 95**

A mixture of 94 (915 mg, 2.81 m mol) and 50 % aqueous 25 sodium hydroxide (5 ml) in dimethyl sulfoxide (40 ml) was heated to 140 °C for 4 hours. After cooling at 0 °C, the mixture was acidified carefully with 1N hydrochloric acid and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at reduced pressure, the 30 carboxylic acid was obtained. The mixture of the carboxylic acid in toluene (3 ml) was stirred at 80 °C for 2.5 hours. After cooling, o-iodomethyl biphenyl (909 mg, 3.09 m mol) in toluene (4 ml) was added at room temperature in nitrogen, and the mixture was stirred for 4 days. Water was added. The 35 mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at a reduced

pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel in hexane / ethyl acetate = 20 / 1.

The purified oil in tetrahydrofuran (4 ml) was added dropwise

to oxallyl chrolide (3 ml) in tetrahydrofuran (6 ml) at 0 °C

5 in nitrogen, then warmed to room temparature and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was added to 28 % aqueous ammonium hydroxide (40 ml) at 0 °C. After diluting with water, the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at a reduced

10 pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel in toluene/ethyl acetate. 316 mg (23 % yield, 5 steps) of the title compound was obtained, Mp, 183-184 °C (hexane/ethyl acetate). IR  $\nu$  max (KBr) 3395, 1692, 1605, 1535, 1494, 1304, 1017  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ .  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  3.89 (3H, s), 4.14 (2H, s), 5.10

15 (3H, m), 6.23 (1H, br s), 6.35-6.48 (2H, m), 6.91-6.98 (2H, m), 7.12-7.52 (13H, m). Analysis: Calc'd for  $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{26}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 0.2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ : C, 75.35; H, 5.38; N, 5.67. Found: C, 75.31; H, 5.48; N, 5.82.

20 Part J: Preparation of

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl)-8-(carbomethoxymethyloxy)-2-methoxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 96

A mixture of 95 (290 mg, 0.59 m mol) and 10 % palladium-coal (210 mg) in methanol (10 ml) and tetrahydrofuran (10 ml)

25 was stirred in hydrogen for 10 hours. The catalyst was filtered and washed with methanol. The filtrate was concentrated under a reduced pressure.

A mixture of the compound, methyl bromoacetate (0.28 ml, 2.96 m mol), potassium carbonate (247 mg, 1.77 m mol) and

30 potassium iodode (110.8 mg, 0.66 m mol) in DMF (4 ml) was stirred at room temparature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched at 0°C with 1N hydrochrolic acid. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). After removing the solvent at a reduced

35 pressure, the residue was chromatographed on silica gel in toluene/ethyl acetate = 1:1. 156 mg (56 % yield, 2 steps) of

-160-

the title compound was obtained, Mp, 188-189 °C (hexane/ethyl acetate). IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3395, 3175, 1761, 1685, 1589, 1490, 1310, 1208 cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 3.78 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 5.56 (1H, br s), 6.27 (1H, d, J=7.8 Hz), 6.47 (1H, dd, J=6.6Hz, 7.8Hz), 6.63 (1H, br s), 6.97 (2H, d, J=6.6Hz), 7.14-7.49 (8H, m). Analysis: Calc'd for C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub> 0.2H<sub>2</sub>O: C, 68.12; H, 5.17; N, 5.88. Found: C, 68.23; H, 5.26; N, 5.97.

10 Part K: Preparation of

2-(3-(Biphenyl-2-yl)-8-(carboxymethyloxy)-2-methoxyindolizin-1-yl)glyoxylamide 97

A mixture of 96 (86.6 mg, 0.183 mmol) and 30 % aqueous sodium hydroxide (2 ml) in methanol (40 ml) and 15 tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was stirred at room temperature for 17 hours. The reaction mixture was quenched with 1N hydrochloric acid. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extracts were dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). After removing the solvent at a reduced pressure, the residue was recrystallized 20 from ethyl acetate. 26.5 mg (32 % yield) of the title compound was obtained. Mp, 197-198 °C (ethyl acetate). IR  $\nu_{max}$  (KBr) 3461, 3351, 1731, 1639, 1618, 1496, 1238, cm<sup>-1</sup>. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO) δ 3.74 (3H, s), 4.15 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.49 (1H, d, J=7.6 Hz), 6.67-6.77 (2H, m), 7.23-7.72 (11H, m). 25 Analysis: Calc'd for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>22</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>: C, 68.12; H, 4.84; N, 6.11. Found: C, 67.89; H, 4.96; N, 6.12.

Therapeutic Use of indolizine compounds

30 The indolizine-1-functional and indolizine-3-functional compounds of the invention are believed to achieve their beneficial therapeutic action principally by direct inhibition of human sPLA<sub>2</sub>, and not by acting as antagonists for arachidonic acid, nor other active agents 35 below arachidonic acid in the arachidonic acid cascade, such as 5-lipoxygenases, cyclooxygenases, and etc.

-161-

The method of the invention for inhibiting sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids comprises contacting a mammal, including a human, suffering from or susceptible to a disease in which sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids is  
5 a cause with a therapeutically effective amount of compound corresponding to formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IB), (IIB), or (IIIB) or a salt or a prodrug derivative thereof.

The compounds of the invention may be used in a method of treating a mammal (e.g., a human) to alleviate the  
10 pathological effects of septic shock, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, and rheumatoid arthritis; wherein the method comprises administrating to a mammal at least one compound represented by formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA),  
15 (IB), (IIB), or (IIIB) or any combination thereof in a therapeutically effective amount. A therapeutically effective amount is an amount sufficient to inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acid and to thereby inhibit or prevent the arachidonic acid cascade and its deleterious  
20 products. The therapeutic amount of compound of the invention needed to inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> may be readily determined by taking a sample of body fluid and assaying it for sPLA<sub>2</sub> content by conventional methods.

25 Pharmaceutical Formulations of the Invention

As previously noted the compounds of this invention are useful for inhibiting sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acids such as arachidonic acid. By the term, "inhibiting"  
30 is meant the prevention or therapeutically significant reduction in release of sPLA<sub>2</sub> initiated fatty acids by the compounds of the invention. By "pharmaceutically acceptable" it is meant the carrier, diluent or excipient must be compatible with the other ingredients of the  
35 formulation and not deleterious to the recipient thereof.

-162-

The specific dose of a compound administered according to this invention to obtain therapeutic or prophylactic effects will, of course, be determined by the particular circumstances surrounding the case, including, for example, 5 the compound administered, the route of administration and the condition being treated. Typical daily doses will contain a non-toxic dosage level of from about 0.01 mg/kg to about 50 mg/kg of body weight of an active compound of this invention.

10 Preferably the pharmaceutical formulation is in unit dosage form. The unit dosage form can be a capsule or tablet itself, or the appropriate number of any of these. The quantity of active ingredient in a unit dose of composition may be varied or adjusted from about 0.1 to about 1000 15 milligrams or more according to the particular treatment involved. It may be appreciated that it may be necessary to make routine variations to the dosage depending on the age and condition of the patient. The dosage will also depend on the route of administration.

20 The compound can be administered by a variety of routes including oral, aerosol, rectal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, and intranasal.

Pharmaceutical formulations of the invention are prepared by combining (e.g., mixing) a therapeutically 25 effective amount of the indolizine-1-functional and indolizine-3-functional compounds of the invention (represented by formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IB), (IIB), or (IIIB)) together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent therefor. The present pharmaceutical 30 formulations are prepared by known procedures using well known and readily available ingredients.

In making the compositions of the present invention, the active ingredient will usually be admixed with a carrier, or diluted by a carrier, or enclosed within a 35 carrier which may be in the form of a capsule, sachet, paper or other container. When the carrier serves as a

-163-

diluent, it may be a solid, semi-solid or liquid material which acts as a vehicle, or can be in the form of tablets, pills, powders, lozenges, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, solutions, syrups, aerosols (as a solid or in a liquid medium), or ointment, containing, for example, up to 10% by weight of the active compound.

The compounds of the present invention are preferably formulated prior to administration.

For the pharmaceutical formulations any suitable carrier known in the art can be used. In such a formulation, the carrier may be a solid, liquid, or mixture of a solid and a liquid. Solid form formulations include powders, tablets and capsules. A solid carrier can be one or more substances which may also act as flavoring agents, lubricants, solubilisers, suspending agents, binders, tablet disintegrating agents and encapsulating material.

Tablets for oral administration may contain suitable excipients such as calcium carbonate, sodium carbonate, lactose, calcium phosphate, together with disintegrating agents, such as maize, starch, or alginic acid, and/or binding agents, for example, gelatin or acacia, and lubricating agents such as magnesium stearate, stearic acid, or talc.

In powders the carrier is a finely divided solid which is in admixture with the finely divided active ingredient. In tablets the active ingredient is mixed with a carrier having the necessary binding properties in suitable proportions and compacted in the shape and size desired. The powders and tablets preferably contain from about 1 to about 99 weight percent of the active ingredient which is the novel compound of this invention. Suitable solid carriers are magnesium carbonate, magnesium stearate, talc, sugar lactose, pectin, dextrin, starch, gelatin, tragacanth, methyl cellulose, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, low melting waxes, and cocoa butter.

-164-

Sterile liquid form formulations include suspensions, emulsions, syrups and elixirs.

The active ingredient can be dissolved or suspended in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, such as sterile water, 5 sterile organic solvent or a mixture of both. The active ingredient can often be dissolved in a suitable organic solvent, for instance aqueous propylene glycol. Other compositions can be made by dispersing the finely divided active ingredient in aqueous starch or sodium carboxymethyl cellulose solution or in a suitable oil.

10 The following pharmaceutical formulations 1 thru 8 are illustrative only and are not intended to limit the scope of the invention in any way. "Active ingredient", refers to a compound according to formulae (IA), (IIA), (IIIA), (IB), (IIB), or (IIIB) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, 15 solvate, or prodrug thereof.

Formulation 1

Hard gelatin capsules are prepared using the following 20 ingredients:

	<u>Quantity</u> (mg/capsule)
Active ingredient	250
Starch, dried	200
Magnesium stearate	<u>10</u>
Total	460 mg

Formulation 2

A tablet is prepared using the ingredients below:

25

	<u>Quantity</u> (mg/tablet)
Active ingredient	250
Cellulose, microcrystalline	400
Silicon dioxide, fumed	10

-165-

Stearic acid	5
Total	665 mg

The components are blended and compressed to form tablets each weighing 665 mg

5           Formulation 3

An aerosol solution is prepared containing the following components:

	<u>Weight</u>
Active ingredient	0.25
Ethanol	25.75
Propellant 22 (Chlorodifluoromethane)	<u>74.00</u>
Total	100.00

10           The active compound is mixed with ethanol and the mixture added to a portion of the propellant 22, cooled to -30°C and transferred to a filling device. The required amount is then fed to a stainless steel container and diluted with the remainder of the propellant. The valve units are  
15           then fitted to the container.

Formulation 4

Tablets, each containing 60 mg of active ingredient, are made as follows:

20

Active ingredient	60 mg
Starch	45 mg
Microcrystalline cellulose	35 mg
Polyvinylpyrrolidone (as 10% solution in water)	4 mg
Sodium carboxymethyl starch	4.5 mg
Magnesium stearate	0.5 mg
Talc	<u>1 mg</u>
Total	150 mg

-166-

The active ingredient, starch and cellulose are passed through a No. 45 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed thoroughly. The aqueous solution containing polyvinylpyrrolidone is mixed with the resultant powder, and the mixture then is passed 5 through a No. 14 mesh U.S. sieve. The granules so produced are dried at 50°C and passed through a No. 18 mesh U.S. sieve. The sodium carboxymethyl starch, magnesium stearate and talc, previously passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve, are then added to the granules which, after mixing, are 10 compressed on a tablet machine to yield tablets each weighing 150 mg.

-167-

Formulation 5

Capsules, each containing 80 mg of active ingredient,  
are made as follows:

Active ingredient	80 mg
Starch	59 mg
Microcrystalline cellulose	59 mg
Magnesium stearate	<u>2 mg</u>
Total	200 mg

5

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 45 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 200 mg quantities.

10

Formulation 6

Suppositories, each containing 225 mg of active ingredient, are made as follows:

Active ingredient	225 mg
Saturated fatty acid glycerides	<u>2,000 mg</u>
Total	2,225 mg

15

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve and suspended in the saturated fatty acid glycerides previously melted using the minimum heat necessary. The mixture is then poured into a suppository mold 20 of nominal 2 g capacity and allowed to cool.

20

Formulation 7

Suspensions, each containing 50 mg of active ingredient per 5 ml dose, are made as follows:

25

Active ingredient	50 mg
Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose	50 mg
Syrup	1.25 ml

-168-

Benzoic acid solution	0.10 ml
Flavor	q.v.
Color	q.v.
Purified water to total	5 ml

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 45 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed with the sodium carboxymethyl cellulose and syrup to form a smooth paste. The benzoic acid solution,  
5 flavor and color are diluted with a portion of the water and added, with stirring. Sufficient water is then added to produce the required volume.

10

#### Formulation 8

An intravenous formulation may be prepared as follows:

Active ingredient	100 mg
Isotonic saline	1,000 ml

The solution of the above ingredients generally is  
15 administered intravenously to a subject at a rate of 1 ml per minute.

#### Assay Experiments

20

#### Assay 1

The following chromogenic assay procedure was used to identify and evaluate inhibitors of recombinant human secreted phospholipase A<sub>2</sub>. The assay described herein has  
25 been adapted for high volume screening using 96 well microtiter plates. A general description of this assay method is found in the article, "Analysis of Human Synovial Fluid Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> on Short Chain Phosphatidylcholine-Mixed Micelles: Development of a Spectrophotometric Assay  
30 Suitable for a Microtiterplate Reader", by Laure J.

-169-

Reynolds, Lori L. Hughes, and Edward A Dennis, Analytical Biochemistry, 204, pp. 190-197, 1992 (the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference):

5 Reagents:

REACTION BUFFER -

CaCl<sub>2</sub>.2H<sub>2</sub>O (1.47 g/L)

KCl (7.455 g/L)

Bovine Serum Albumin (fatty acid free) (1 g/L)

10 (Sigma A-7030, product of Sigma Chemical Co.  
St. Louis MO, USA)

TRIS HCl (3.94 g/L)

pH 7.5 (adjust with NaOH)

ENZYME BUFFER -

15 0.05 NaOAc.3H<sub>2</sub>O, pH 4.5

0.2 NaCl

Adjust pH to 4.5 with acetic acid

DTNB - 5,5'-dithiobis-2-nitrobenzoic acid

RACEMIC DIHEPTANOYL THIO - PC

20 racemic 1,2-bis(heptanoylthio)-1,2-dideoxy-sn-glycero-3-phosphorylcholine

TRITON X-100<sup>TM</sup> prepare at 6.249 mg/ml in reaction buffer to equal 10uM.

REACTION MIXTURE -

25 A measured volume of racemic dipheptanoyl thio PC supplied in chloroform at a concentration of 100 mg/ml is taken to dryness and redissolved in 10 millimolar TRITON X-100<sup>TM</sup> nonionic detergent aqueous solution. Reaction Buffer is added to the solution, then DTNB to give the Reaction

30 Mixture.

The reaction mixture thus obtained contains 1mM diheptanoyl thio-PC substrate, 0.29 mM Triton X-100<sup>TM</sup> detergent, and 0.12 mM DTMB in a buffered aqueous solution at pH 7.5.

35

-170-

Assay Procedure:

1. Add 0.2 ml reaction mixture to all wells;
  2. Add 10 ul test compound (or solvent blank) to appropriate wells, mix 20 seconds;
  - 5       3. Add 50 nanograms of sPLA<sub>2</sub> (10 microliters) to appropriate wells;
  4. Incubate plate at 40°C for 30 minutes;
  5. Read absorbance of wells at 405 nanometers with an automatic plate reader.
- 10       All compounds were tested in triplicate. Typically, compounds were tested at a final concentration of 5 ug/ml. Compounds were considered active when they exhibited 40% inhibition or greater compared to uninhibited control reactions when measured at 405 nanometers. Lack of color development at 405 nanometers evidenced inhibition.
- 15       Compounds initially found to be active were reassayed to confirm their activity and, if sufficiently active, IC<sub>50</sub> values were determined. Typically, the IC<sub>50</sub> values (see, Table I, below) were determined by diluting test compound serially two-fold such that the final concentration in the reaction ranged from 45 ug/mL to 0.35 ug/ml. More potent inhibitors required significantly greater dilution. In all cases, % inhibition measured at 405 nanometers generated by enzyme reactions containing inhibitors relative to the uninhibited control reactions was determined. Each sample was titrated in triplicate and result values were averaged for plotting and calculation of IC<sub>50</sub> values. IC<sub>50</sub> were determined by plotting log concentration versus inhibition values in the range from 10-90% inhibition.
- 20
- 25
- 30       The results of Human Secreted Phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> Inhibition tests are displayed in the Table below:

-171-

TABLE

sPLA<sub>2</sub> Chromogenic Assay Data

5	Compd.	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Compd.	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	Compd.	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
10	11	1.1	51t	0.13	58k	0.043
	20x	0.84	52a	0.018	59a	0.007
	21x	0.14	52b	0.021	59b	0.011
	21y	0.35	52c	0.019	59c	0.046
	22x	0.014	52d	0.023	59d	0.083
	22y	0.015	52e	0.062	59e	0.055
15	34	0.89	52f	0.017	59f	0.07
	35a	0.4	52g	0.017	59g	0.039
	35g	0.047	52i	0.051	59h	0.061
	37a	0.044	52j	0.006	59i	0.022
	37d	0.013	52k	0.011	59j	0.053
	37g	0.023	52l	0.010	59k	0.113
20	38a	0.052	52m	0.021	59l	0.11
	39d	0.017	52n	0.036	59m	0.007
	40a	0.008	52o	0.025	59n	0.6
	40b	>50*	52r	0.046	59o	0.49
	40c	>50*	52s	0.011	59p	0.2
	40d	0.006	52t	0.01	67a	0.2
25	40f	>50*	52v	0.029	67c	0.14
	40g	0.008	52w	0.014	69a	0.08
	49k	0.79	57a	0.033	70a	0.044
	49s	0.36	57g	0.08	70b	0.24
	51a	0.81	57j	0.79	70c	0.13
	51b	0.31	58a	0.008	71a	0.6
30	51c	0.43	58c	0.035	82	0.12
	51d	0.55	58e	0.1	83	0.016
	51f	0.59	58f	0.28	97	0.015
	51g	0.17	58g	0.009		
	51j	0.02	58h	0.038		
	51k	0.22	58i	0.051		
35	51l	0.096	58j	0.023		
	51m	0.31				
	51s	0.15				

\* = comparative example

Assay 2

45 Effect of Indolizines on PLA2 induced Pancreatitis in Rats

Experimental Protocol:

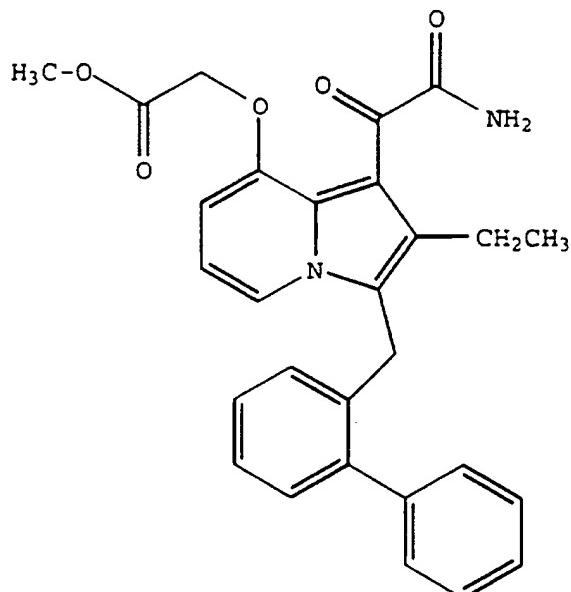
-172-

Male Wistar rats weighing 220-270g were fasted overnight. Under pentobarbital anesthesia (40 mg/kg intraperitoneally), laparotomy was made and pancreatitis was induced by the retrograde infusion of a mixture of porcine 5 pancreas PLA2 (300U/rat) and sodium taurocholate (10 mg/rat) into the common bile duct in a volume of 0.2 ml. The survival rate at 12 hours after the induction of pancreatitis was checked.

Compound 39d was suspended in a 0.6% gum arabic solution 10 used as vehicle. Eleven to twelve animals were used in each test group.

Results:

Compound 39d (1, 3, 10 mg/kg) significantly improved the 15 animal survival rate at 12 hour. Rat survival (%) for (vehicle), (1), (3), and (10) mg/kg of compound 39d group were 33.3, 81.8\*, 91.7\*\*, and 91.7\*\*, respectively (\*P<0.05, \*\*P<0.01, Chi-square test).

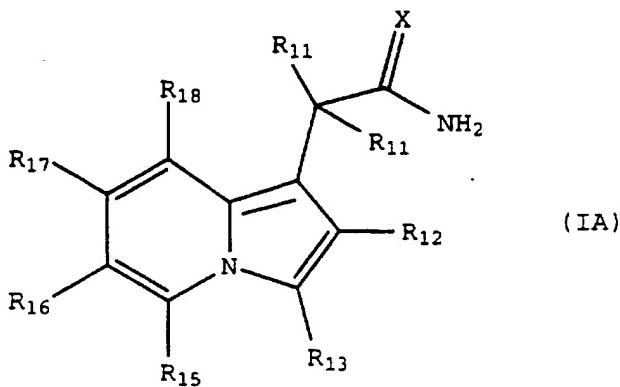


-173-

While the present invention has been illustrated above by certain specific embodiments, it is not intended that these specific examples should limit the scope of the invention as described in the appended claims.

We claim:

1. An indolizine-1-acetamide compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is represented by the formula (IA);



10 wherein;

X is oxygen or sulfur;

each R11 is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo;

R13 is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;

15 (a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or  
(b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or more independently selected non-interfering substituents;  
or

20 (c) is the group -(L)-R80; where, -(L)- is a divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R80 is a group selected from (a) or (b);

R12 is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or  
25 a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3 atoms other than hydrogen;

R17 and R18 are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(La)-(acidic

-175-

group); wherein -(La)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> must be the group, -(La)-(acidic group); and R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from

- 5 hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical, carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

10

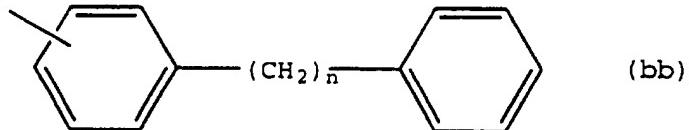
2. The compound of Claim 1 wherein;

(i) both X are oxygen;

15 (ii) R<sub>12</sub> is selected from the group; halo, cyclopropyl, methyl, ethyl, and propyl;

20 (iii) R<sub>13</sub> has as a linking group -(L)- an alkylene chain of 1 or 2 carbon atoms and R<sub>80</sub> is selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenylcyclohexenyl, acenaphthylényl, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzyl and related bibenzyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),

25

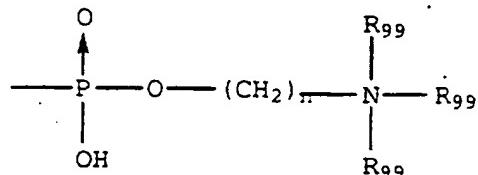
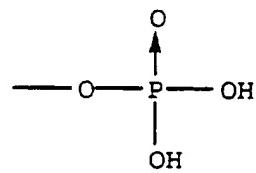
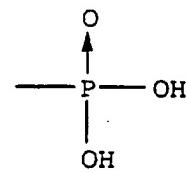
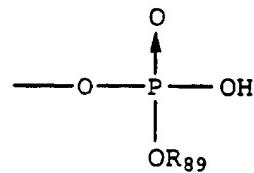
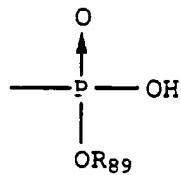


where n is a number from 1 to 8;

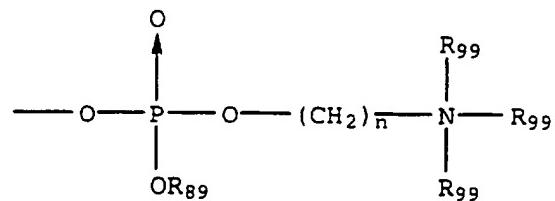
30 (iv) R<sub>17</sub> or R<sub>18</sub> have an (acidic group) on the group -(La)-(acidic group) selected from:

-5-tetrazolyl,

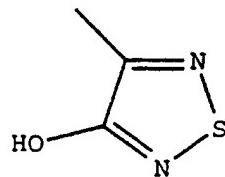
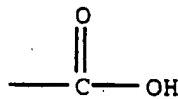
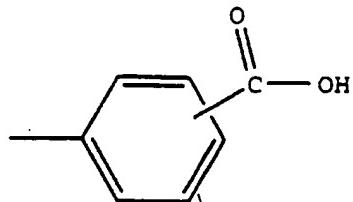
-176-

-SO<sub>3</sub>H,

5



-177-



;

where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl; and

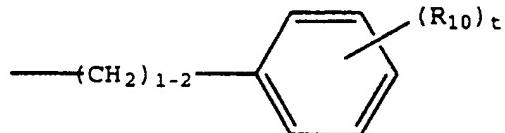
5

- (v) R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen and non-interfering substituents, with the non-interfering substituents being selected from the group consisting of the following: C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio, -(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl, fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal, thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

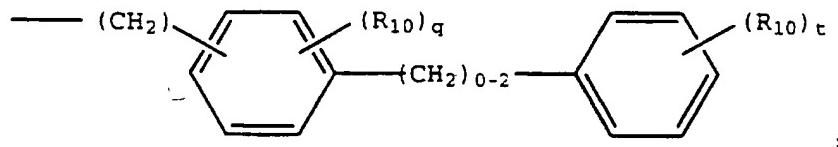
-178-

3. The compound of Claim 2, wherein,

(A) for (iii), the group R<sub>13</sub> is selected from the group  
5 consisting of



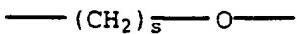
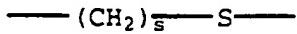
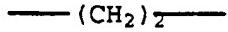
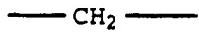
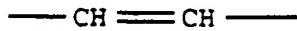
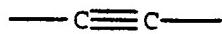
and



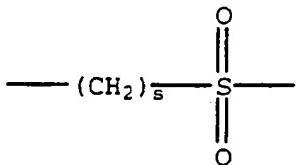
10 where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> haloalkyl, q is a number from 0 to 4, and t is a number  
from 0 to 5; and

15 (B) for (iii) the linking group -(L)- of R<sub>13</sub> is  
selected from the group consisting of:

-179-



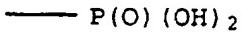
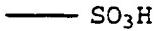
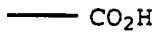
and



where  $s = 0$  or  $1$ ;

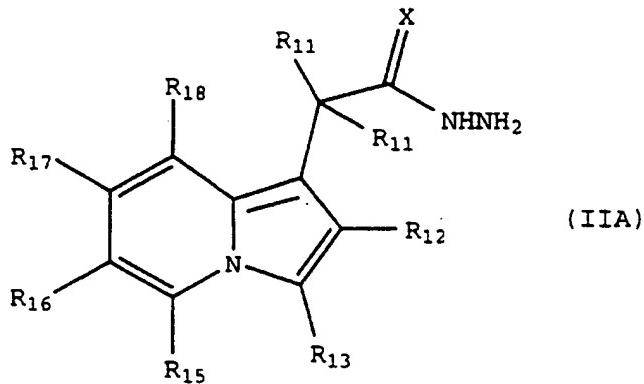
(C) for (iv) the (acidic group) of R<sub>17</sub> or R<sub>18</sub> is selected from:

5



4. An indolizine-1-acetic acid hydrazide compound or a  
10 pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof where said compound is represented by the formula (IIA);

-180-



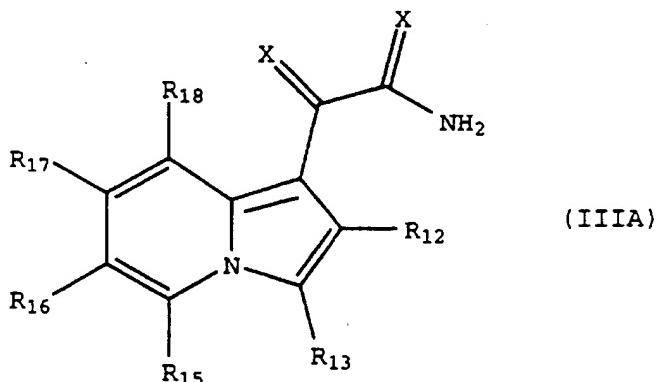
wherein:

- X is oxygen or sulfur;
- 5 each R<sub>11</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo;
- R<sub>13</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where:
  - (a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or
  - 10 (b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or more independently selected non-interfering substituents; or
  - (c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a
- 15 R<sub>12</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3 atoms other than hydrogen;
- 20 R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group); wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> must be the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group); and
- 25 R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical, carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering

-181-

substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

- 5        5. An indolizine-1-glyoxylamide compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is represented by the formula (IIIA);



10

X is oxygen or sulfur;

R13 is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;

(a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub>

- 15        alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or  
 (b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or  
 more independently selected non-interfering substituents;  
 or

(c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a

- 20        divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a group selected from (a) or (b);

R<sub>12</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3

- 25        atoms other than hydrogen;

R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group), wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid

-182-

linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>17</sub> and R<sub>18</sub> must be the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group);

R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical,

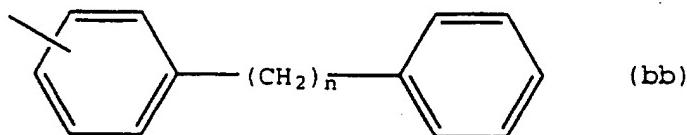
- 5 carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

10 6. The compound of Claim 5 wherein;

(i) X is oxygen;

(ii) R<sub>12</sub> is selected from the group; halo, cyclopropyl, methyl, ethyl, and propyl;

- 15 (iii) R<sub>13</sub> has as a linking group -(L)- an alkylene chain of 1 or 2 carbon atoms and R<sub>80</sub> is selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, 20 indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenylcyclohexenyl, acenaphthylene, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzyl and related bibenzyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),



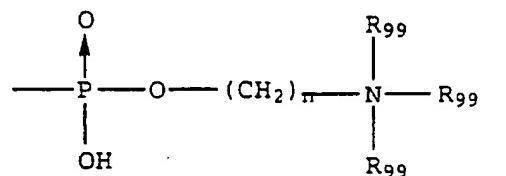
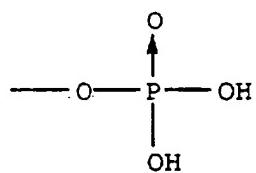
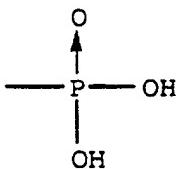
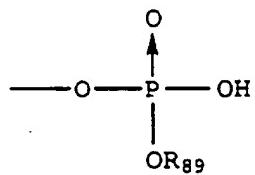
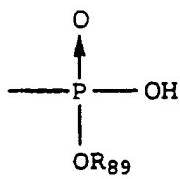
25

where n is a number from 1 to 8;

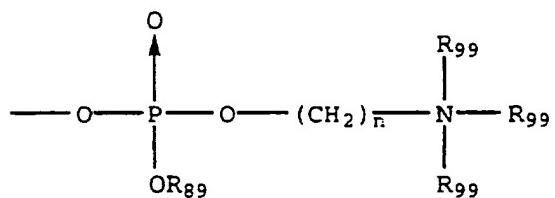
- (iv) R<sub>17</sub> or R<sub>18</sub> have an (acidic group) on the  
30 group -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group) selected from:

-5-tetrazolyl,  
-SO<sub>3</sub>H.

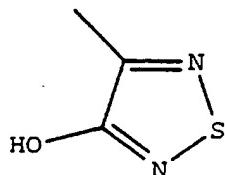
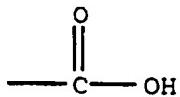
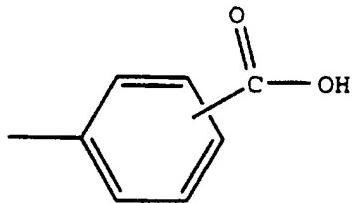
-183-



5



-184-



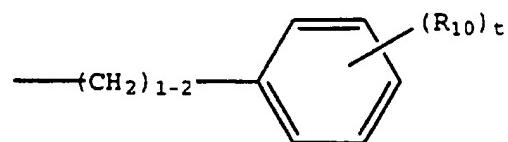
where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl; and

5

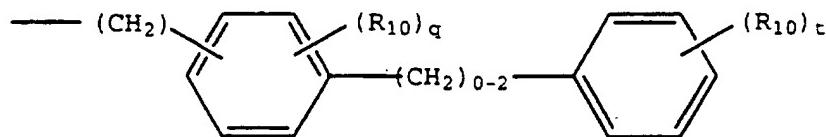
- (v) R<sub>15</sub> and R<sub>16</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen and non-interfering substituents, with the non-interfering substituents being selected from the group consisting of the following: C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio, -(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl, carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl, fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy, hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal, thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

-185-

7. The compound of Claim 6, wherein,  
(A) for (iii), the group R<sub>13</sub> is selected from the group  
5 consisting of



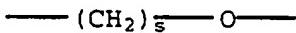
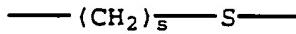
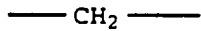
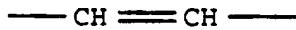
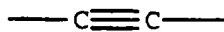
and



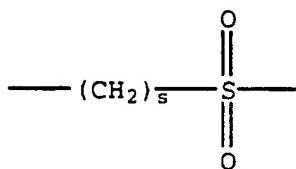
where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-  
10 C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub>  
haloalkyl, q is a number from 0 to 4, and t is a number  
from 0 to 5; and

(B) for (iii) the linking group -(L)- of R<sub>13</sub> is  
15 selected from the group consisting of:

-186-

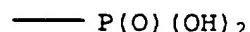
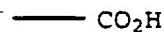


and

where  $s = 0$  or  $1$ ;

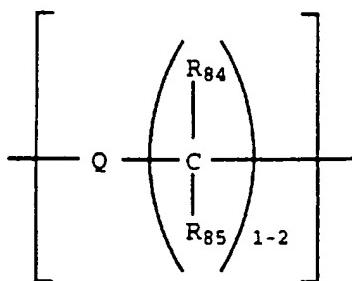
(C) for (iv) the (acidic group) of R<sub>17</sub> or R<sub>18</sub> is selected from:

5



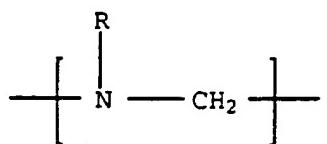
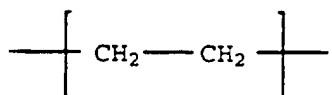
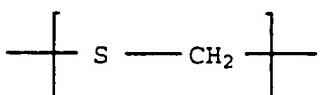
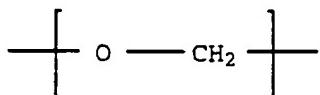
8. The compound of Claim 5 wherein R<sub>18</sub> comprises an  
10 acidic group and has an acid linker with an acid linker length of 2 or 3 and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>18</sub> is represented by the formula;

-187-

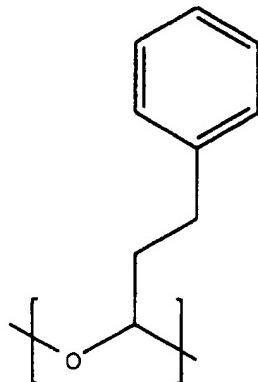
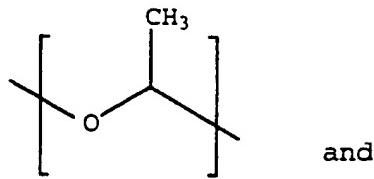


where Q is selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from  
 5 hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

9. The compound of Claim 8 wherein R<sub>18</sub> comprises an  
 10 acidic group and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>18</sub> is selected from the group consisting of;

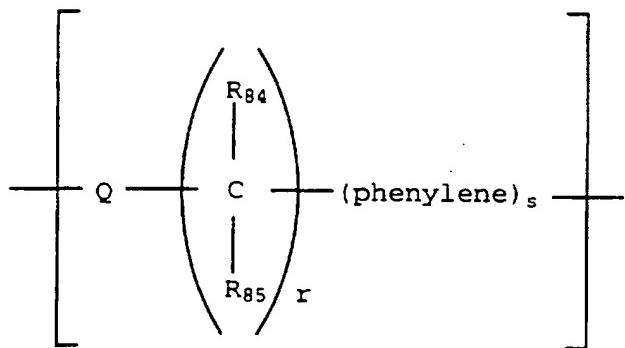


-188-



where R is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl.

10. The compound of Claim 5 wherein R<sub>17</sub> comprises an  
acidic group and has an acid linker with an acid linker  
length of 3 to 10 atoms and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-,  
for R<sub>17</sub> is selected from;



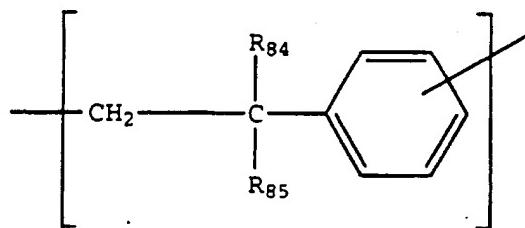
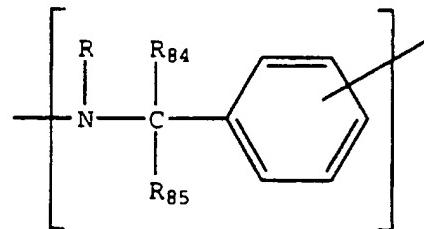
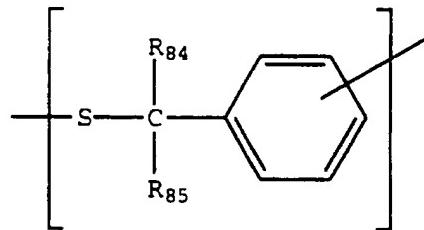
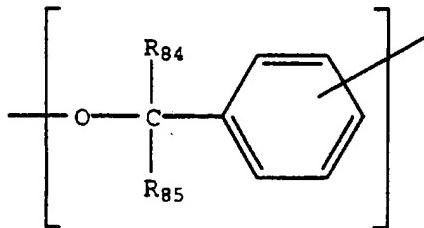
10

where r is a number from 1 to 7, s is 0 or 1, and Q is  
selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and  
R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen,

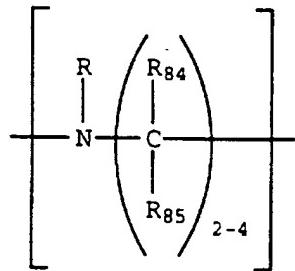
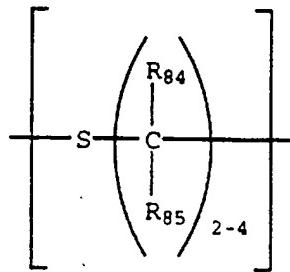
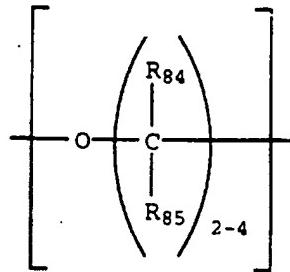
-189-

C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

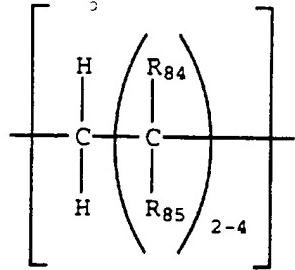
- 5 11. The compound of Claim 10 wherein the acid linker, -(La)-, for R<sub>17</sub> is selected from group consisting of;



-190-

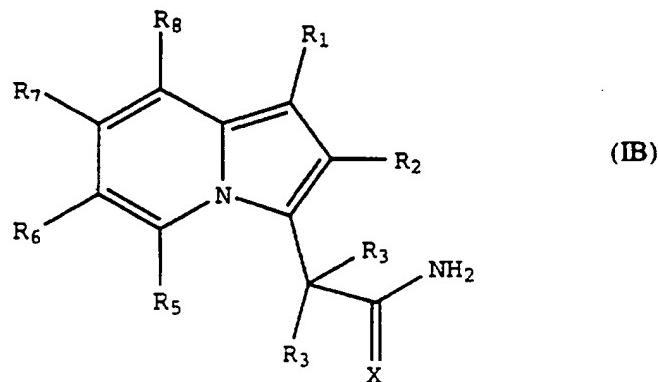


and



- 5 wherein; R is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

12. An indolizine-3-acetamide compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is represented by  
5 the formula (IB), as set out below:



wherein;

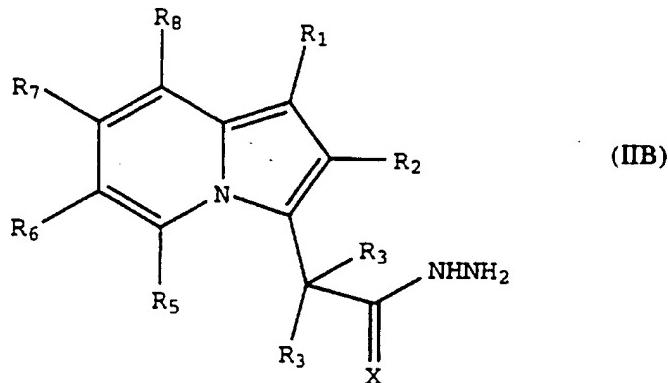
- 10        X is selected from oxygen or sulfur;  
each R<sub>3</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or  
halo;
- R<sub>1</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;  
      (a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub>  
15        alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or  
      (b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or  
more independently selected non-interfering substituents;  
or  
      (c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a  
20        divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a  
group selected from (a) or (b);
- R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl,  
C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or  
a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3  
25        atoms other than hydrogen;
- R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a  
non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic  
group); wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid

-192-

linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> must be the group, -(La)-(acidic group);

R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical, 5 carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

- 10        13. A indolizine-3-hydrazide compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is represented by the formula (IIB), as set out below:



15

wherein;

X is selected from oxygen or sulfur;  
each R<sub>3</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or  
20 halo;

R<sub>1</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;  
(a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or  
(b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or  
25 more independently selected non-interfering substituents;  
or

-193-

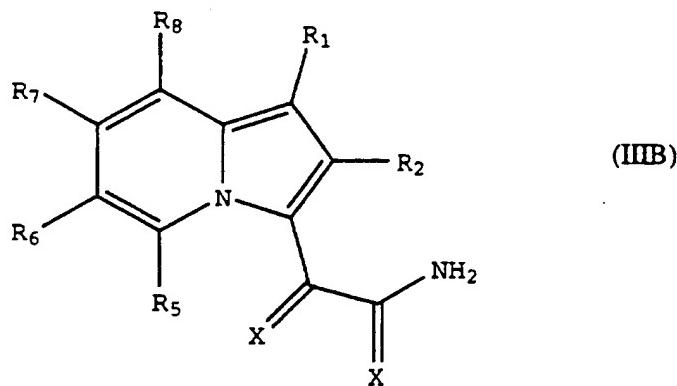
(c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a group selected from (a) or (b);

R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl,  
5 C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3 atoms other than hydrogen;

10 R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(La)-(acidic group); wherein -(La)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> must be the group, -(La)-(acidic group);

15 R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical, carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

20 14. A indolizine-3-glyoxylamide compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is represented by the formula (IIIB), as set out below:



25

wherein;

-194-

each X is independently selected from oxygen or sulfur;

each R<sub>3</sub> is independently hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, or halo;

5 R<sub>1</sub> is selected from groups (a), (b) and (c) where;

(a) is C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>20</sub> alkynyl, carbocyclic radical, or heterocyclic radical, or

(b) is a member of (a) substituted with one or more independently selected non-interfering substituents;

10 or

(c) is the group -(L)-R<sub>80</sub>; where, -(L)- is a divalent linking group of 1 to 12 atoms and where R<sub>80</sub> is a group selected from (a) or (b);

15 R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> cycloalkenyl, -O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>2</sub> alkyl), or a non-interfering substituent having a total of 1 to 3 atoms other than hydrogen;

20 R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> are independently selected from hydrogen, a non-interfering substituent, or the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group); wherein -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, is an acid linker having an acid linker length of 1 to 10; provided, that at least one of R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>6</sub> must be the group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group);

25 R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen; non-interfering substituent, carbocyclic radical, carbocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents, heterocyclic radical, and heterocyclic radical substituted with non-interfering substituents.

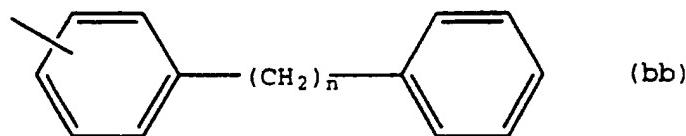
30 15. The compound of Claim 14 wherein;

(i) X is oxygen;

(ii) R<sub>2</sub> is selected from the group; halo, cyclopropyl, methyl, ethyl, and propyl;

-195-

(iii) R<sub>1</sub> has as a linking group -(L)- an alkylene chain of 1 or 2 carbon atoms and R<sub>80</sub> is selected from the group consisting of cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, phenyl, naphthyl, norbornanyl, bicycloheptadienyl, toluyl, xylenyl, 5 indenyl, stilbenyl, terphenylyl, diphenylethylenyl, phenyl-cyclohexenyl, acenaphthylenyl, and anthracenyl, biphenyl, bibenzyl and related bibenzyl homologues represented by the formula (bb),

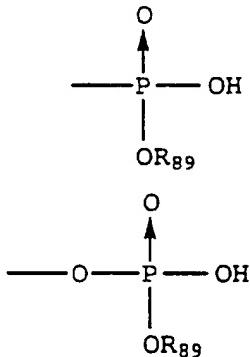


10

where n is a number from 1 to 8;

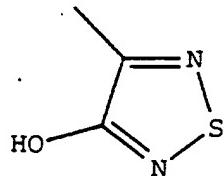
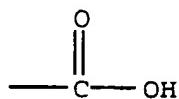
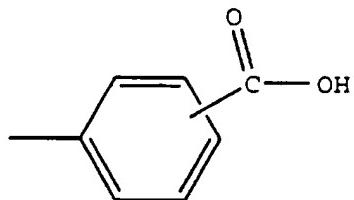
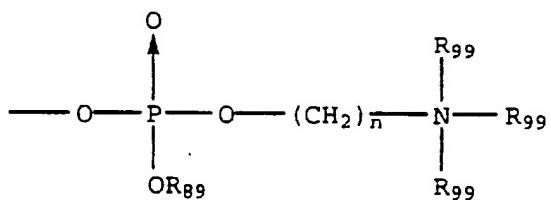
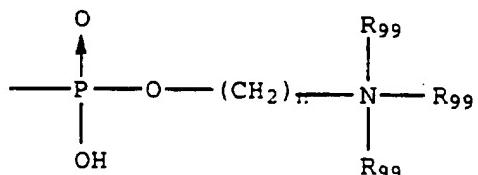
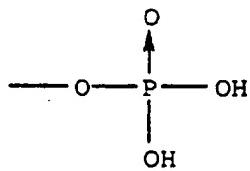
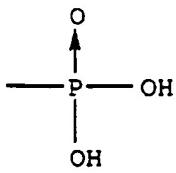
(iv) R<sub>5</sub> or R<sub>6</sub> have an (acidic group) on the 15 group -(L<sub>a</sub>)-(acidic group) selected from:

-5-tetrazolyl,  
-SO<sub>3</sub>H,



20

-196-



-197-

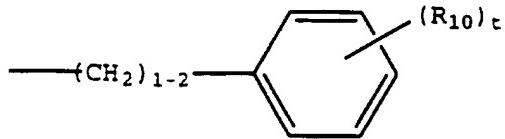
where n is 1 to 8, R<sub>89</sub> is a metal or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, and R<sub>99</sub> is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl; and

(v) R<sub>7</sub> and R<sub>8</sub> are each independently selected from  
5 hydrogen and non-interfering substituents, with the non-  
interfering substituents being selected from the group  
consisting of the following: C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-  
C<sub>6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> aralkyl, C<sub>7</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkyl,  
C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub> cycloalkenyl, phenyl, toluyl, xylenyl, biphenyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
10 alkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkenyloxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkynyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub>  
alkoxyalkyl, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyalkyloxy, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonyl, C<sub>2</sub>-  
C<sub>12</sub> alkylcarbonylamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkoxyamino, C<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>12</sub>  
alkoxyaminocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>12</sub> alkylamino, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>2</sub>-  
C<sub>12</sub> alkylthiocarbonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>  
15 alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkoxy, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> haloalkylsulfonyl, C<sub>1</sub>-  
C<sub>6</sub> haloalkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> hydroxyalkyl, -C(O)O(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl),  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-O-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> alkyl), benzyloxy, phenoxy, phenylthio,  
-(CONHSO<sub>2</sub>R), -CHO, amino, amidino, bromo, carbamyl, carboxyl,  
carbalkoxy, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-CO<sub>2</sub>H, chloro, cyano, cyanoguanidinyl,  
20 fluoro, guanidino, hydrazide, hydrazino, hydrazido, hydroxy,  
hydroxyamino, iodo, nitro, phosphono, -SO<sub>3</sub>H, thioacetal,  
thiocarbonyl, and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub> carbonyl; where n is from 1 to 8.

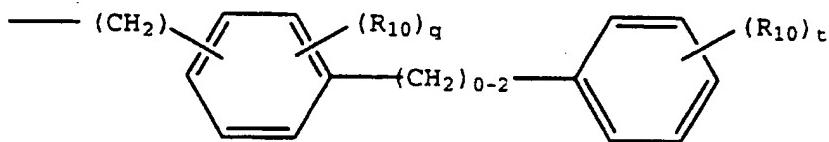
25 16. The compound of Claim 15, wherein,

(A) for (iii), the group R<sub>1</sub> is selected from the group  
consisting of

-198-

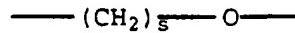
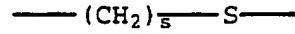
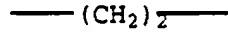
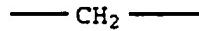
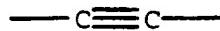


and

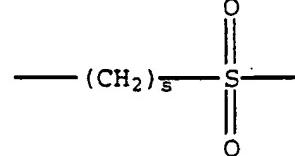


- where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> haloalkyl, q is a number from 0 to 4, and t is a number from 0 to 5; and where R<sub>10</sub> is a radical independently selected from halo, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy, -S-(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl), and C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> haloalkyl, and t is a number independently selected from 0 to 5; and
- 10 (B) for (iii) the linking group -(L)- of R<sub>1</sub> is selected from the group consisting of:

-199-



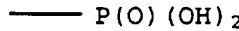
and



where s is 0 or 1;

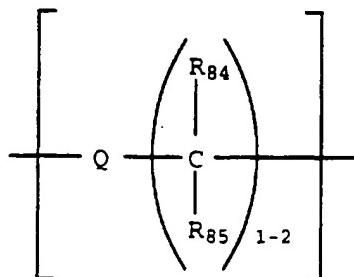
(C) for (iv) the (acidic group) of R5 or R6 is selected from:

5



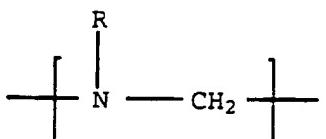
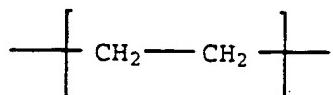
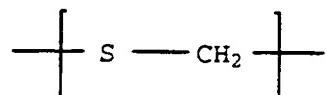
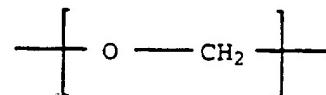
17. The compound of Claim 14 wherein R5 comprises an  
10 acidic group and has an acid linker with an acid linker length of 2 or 3 and the acid linker group, -(La)-, for R5 is represented by the formula;

-200-

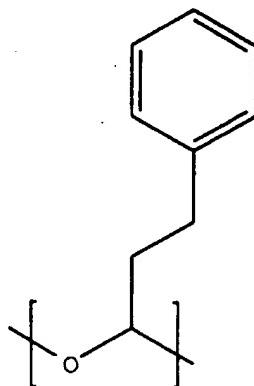
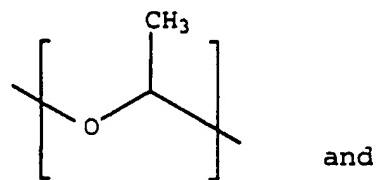


where Q is selected from the group  $-(CH_2)-$ ,  $-O-$ ,  $-NH-$ , and  $-S-$ , and R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from  
 5 hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

18. The compound of Claim 17 wherein R<sub>5</sub> comprises an  
 10 acidic group and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-, for R<sub>5</sub> is selected from the group consisting of;

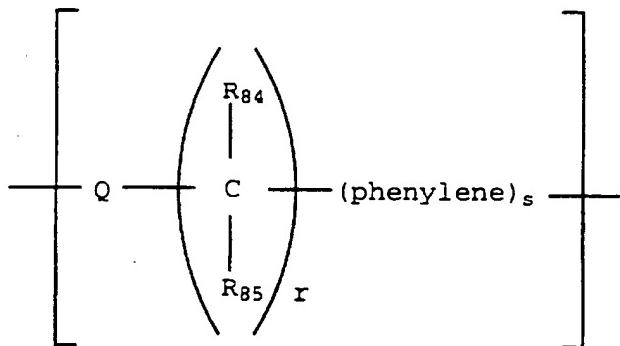


-201-



where R is H or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl.

19. The compound of Claim 14 wherein R<sub>6</sub> comprises an  
acidic group and has an acid linker with an acid linker  
length of 3 to 10 atoms and the acid linker group, -(L<sub>a</sub>)-,  
for R<sub>6</sub> is selected from;



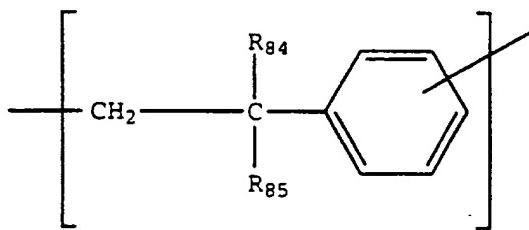
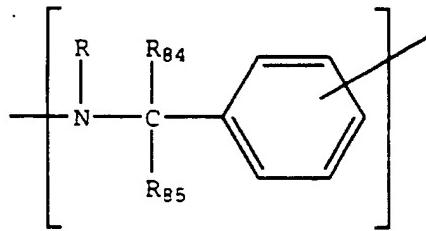
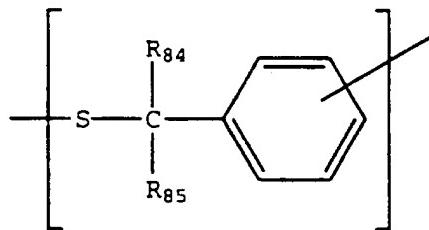
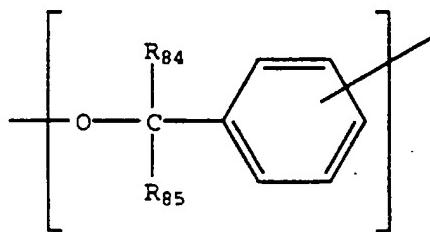
10

where r is a number from 1 to 7, s is 0 or 1, and Q is  
selected from the group -(CH<sub>2</sub>)-, -O-, -NH-, and -S-, and  
R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen,

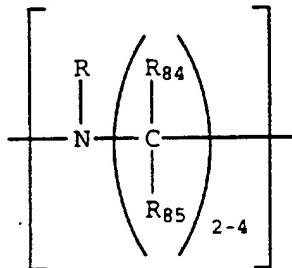
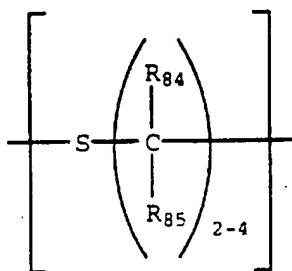
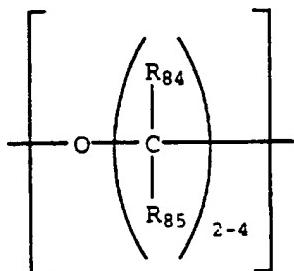
-202-

C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

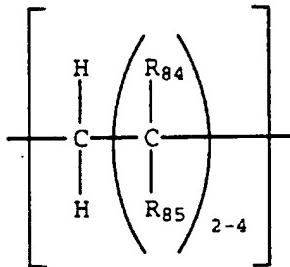
- 5 20. The compound of Claim 19 wherein the acid linker, -(La)-, for R<sub>6</sub> is selected from group consisting of;



-203-



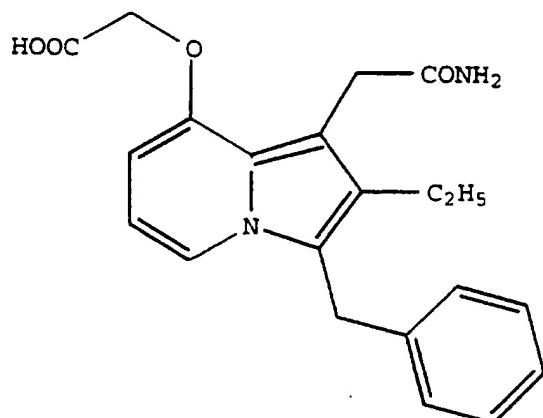
and



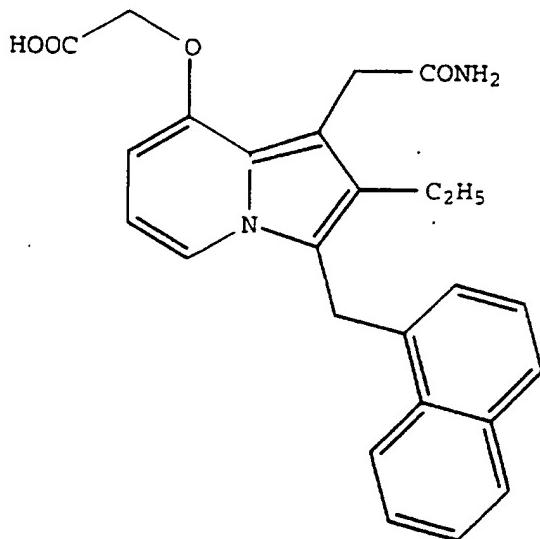
5 wherein; R is hydrogen or C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>4</sub> alkyl, R<sub>84</sub> and R<sub>85</sub> are each independently selected from hydrogen, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkyl, aryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> alkaryl, C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>10</sub> aralkyl, carboxy, carbalkoxy, and halo.

-204-

21. An indolizine-1-acetamide functional compound or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is selected from  
5 the group represented by the following formulae:



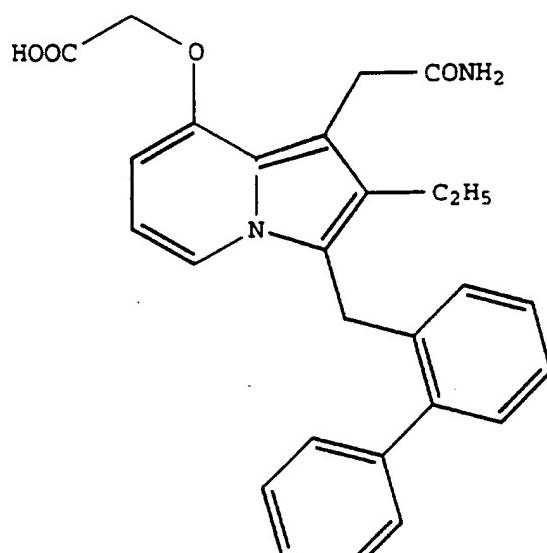
(22v)



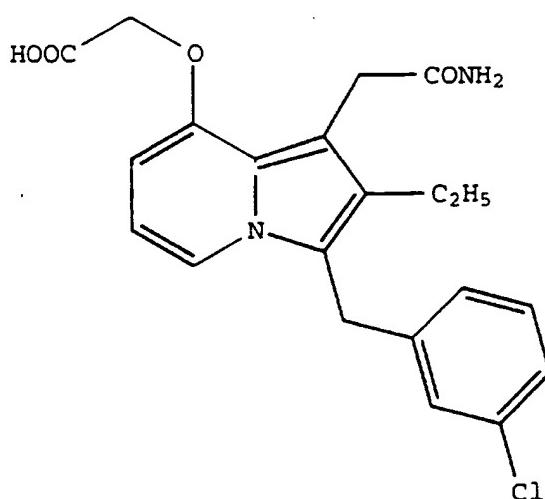
10

(22w)

-205-

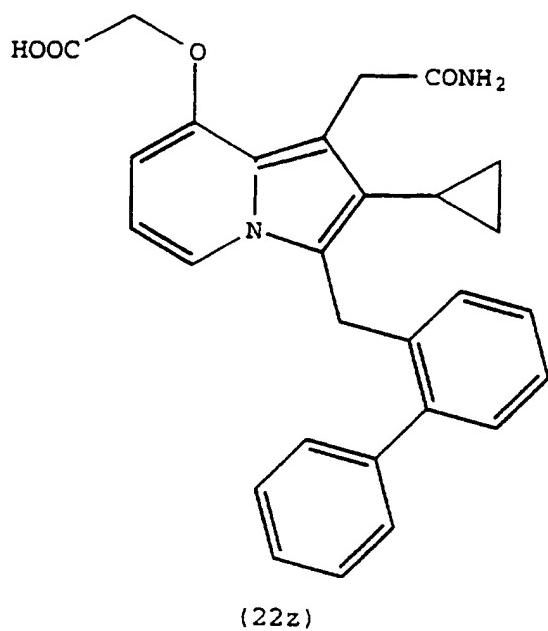


(22x)

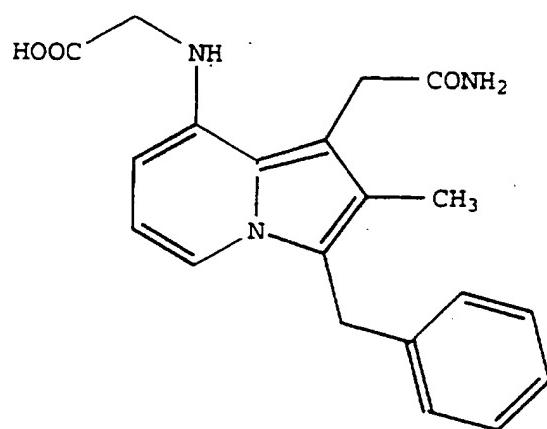


(22y)

-206-



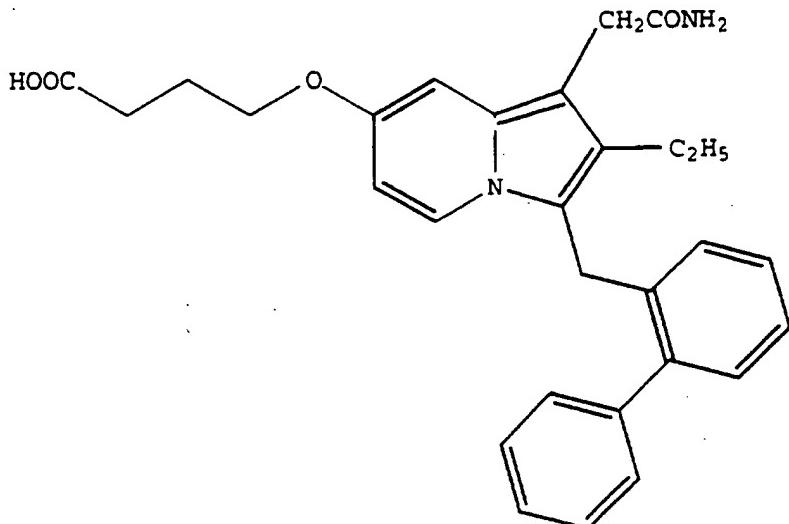
(22z)



5

(92)

-207-

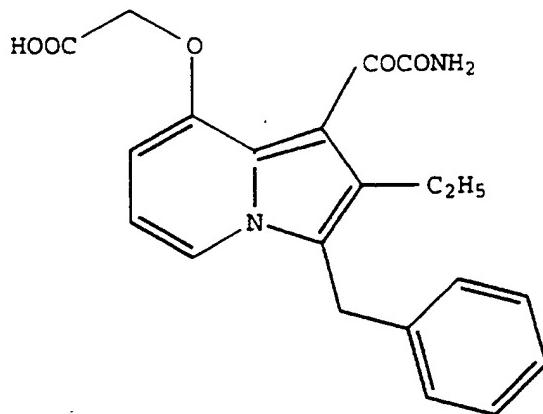


(71b)

and mixtures of the above compounds.

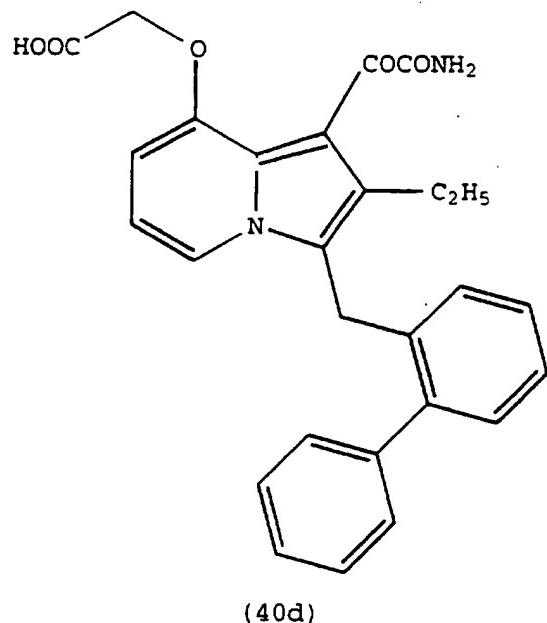
5

22. An indolizine-1-glyoxylamide functional compound and a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug derivative thereof; wherein said compound is selected from  
10 the group represented by the following formulae:

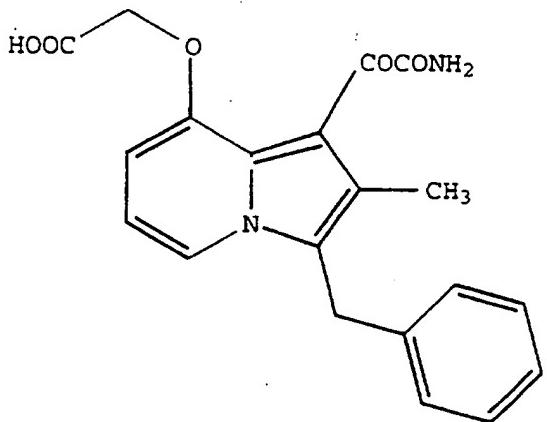


(40a)

-208-



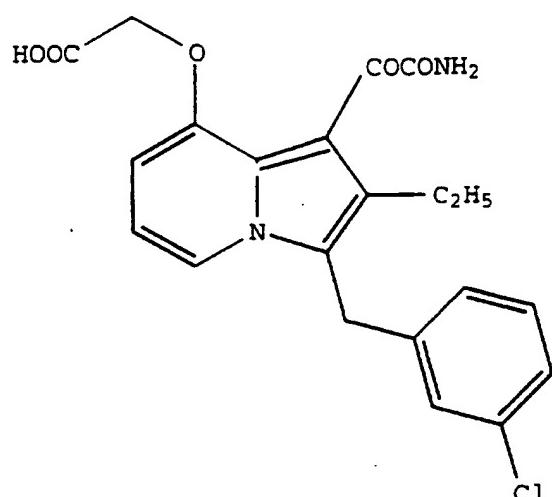
(40d)



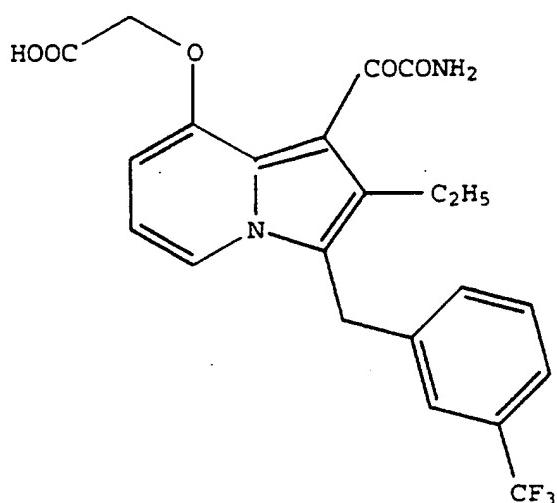
5

(40g)

-209-

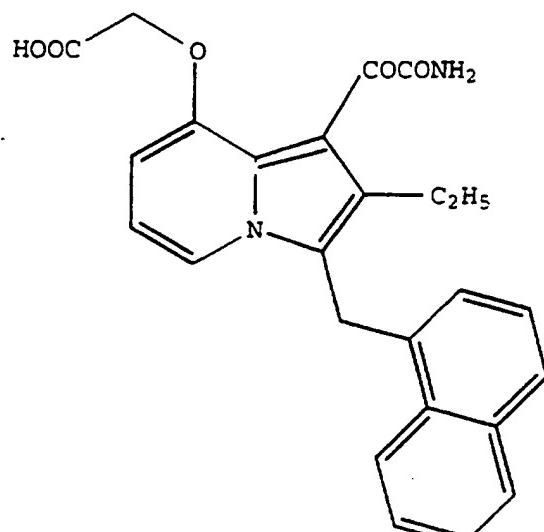


(40h)

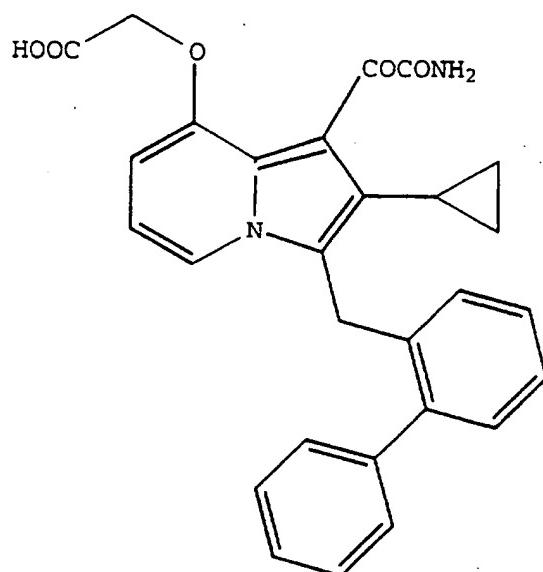


(40i)

-210-



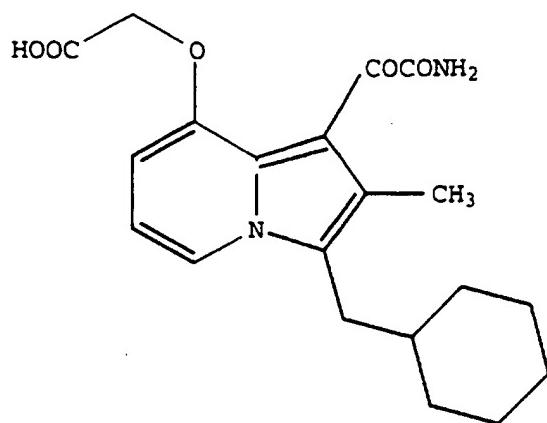
(40j)



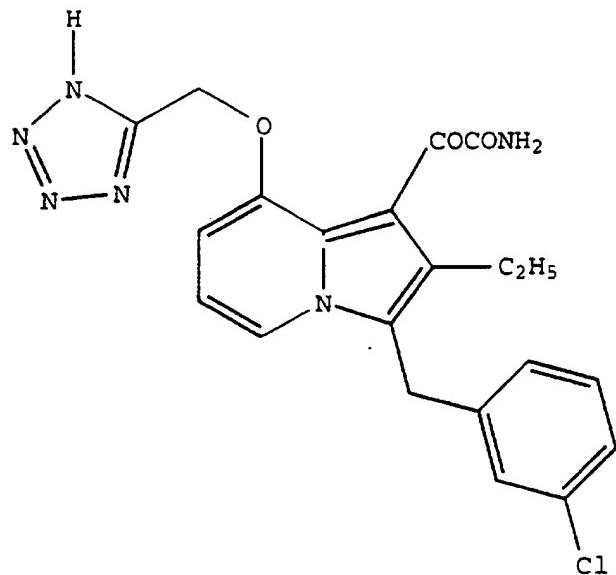
5

(40k)

-211-

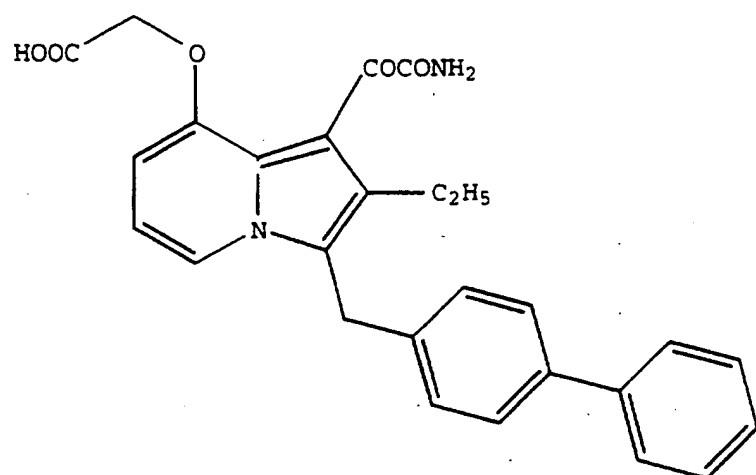


(401)

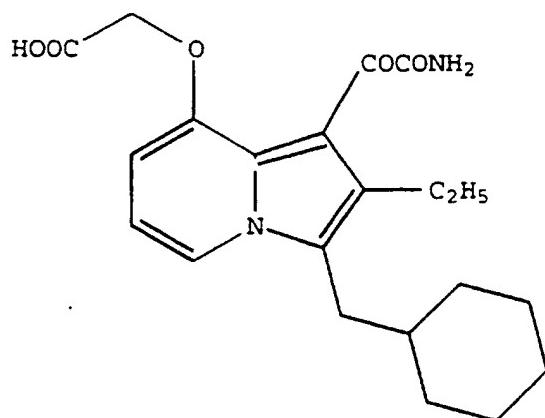


(42)

-212-

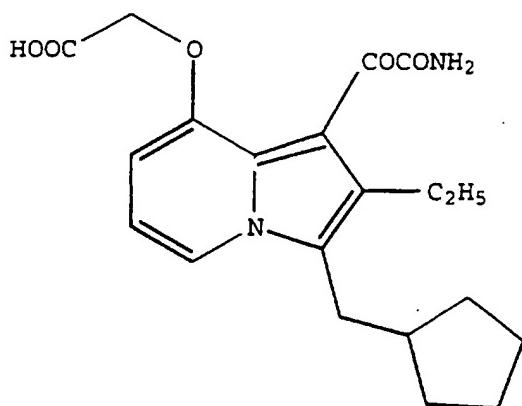


(52a)



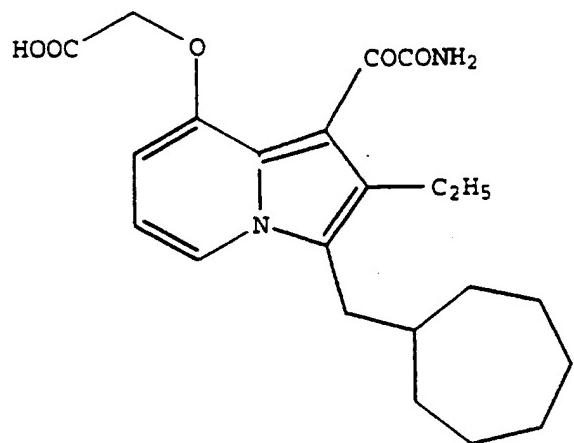
5

(52b)



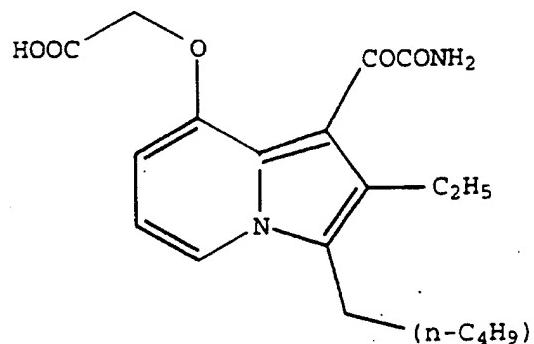
-213-

(52c)



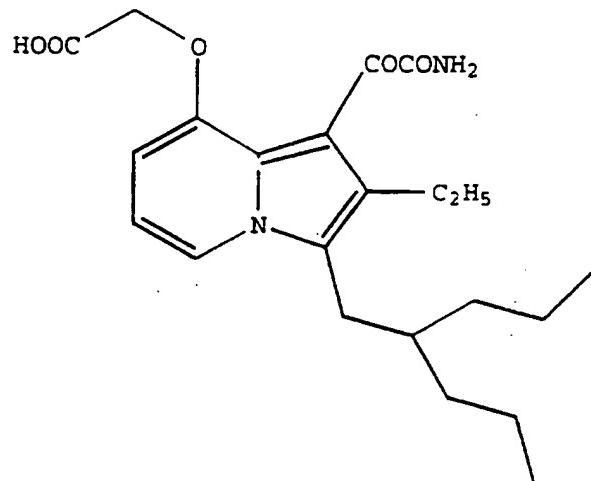
(52d)

5

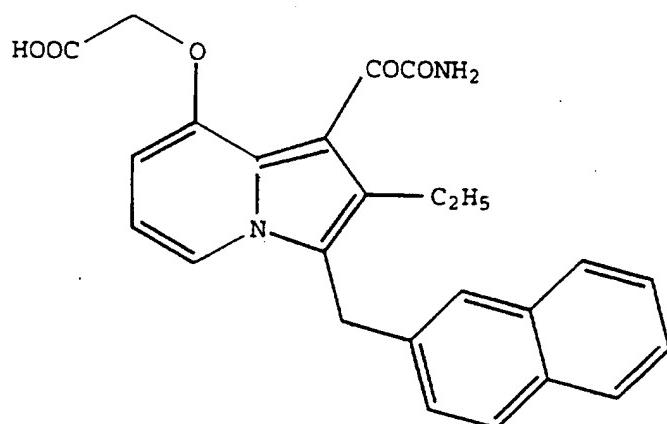


(52e)

-214-

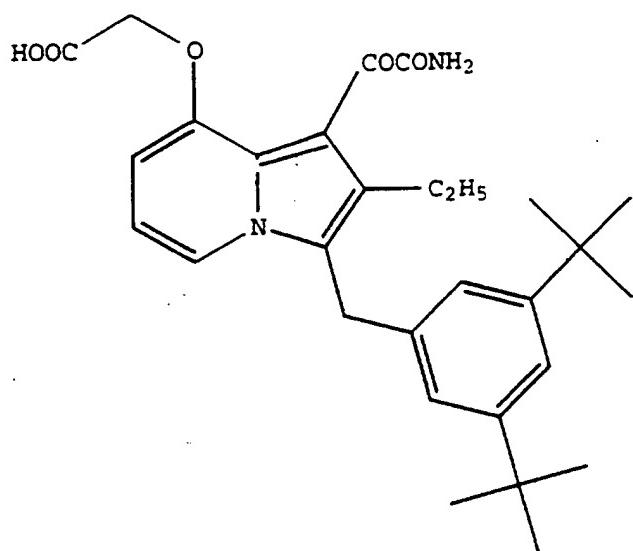


(52f)

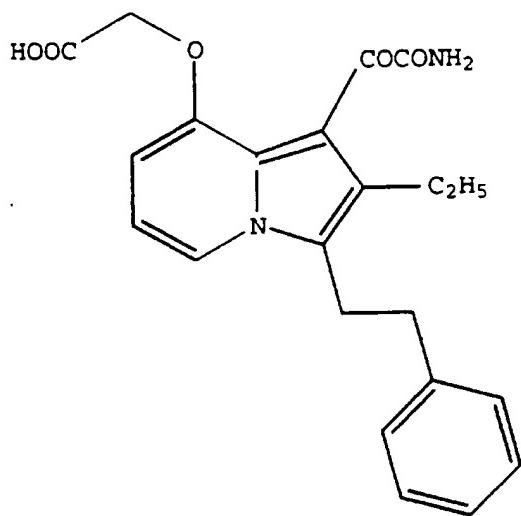


(52g)

-215-

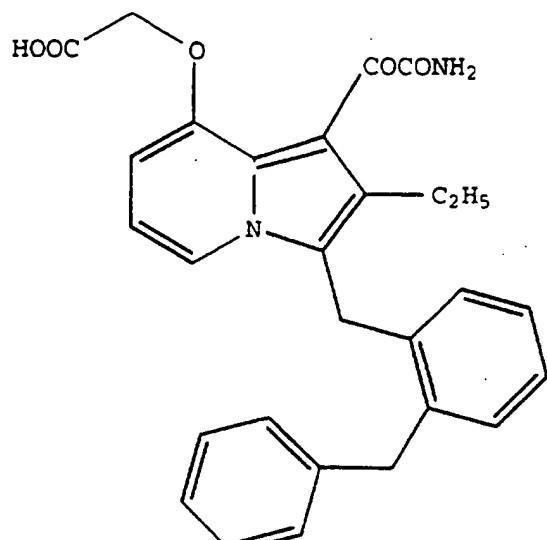


(52h)

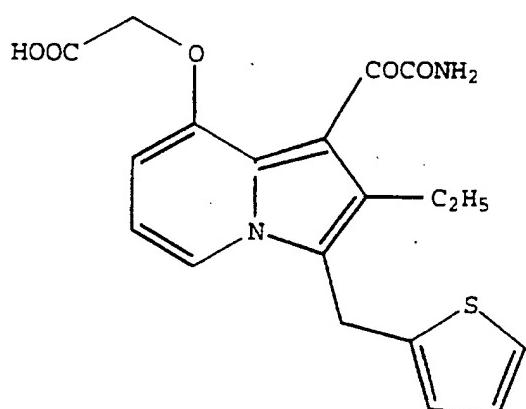


(52i)

-216-



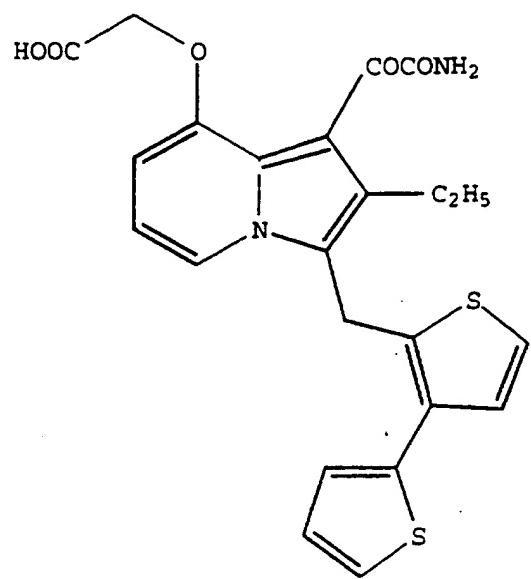
(52j)



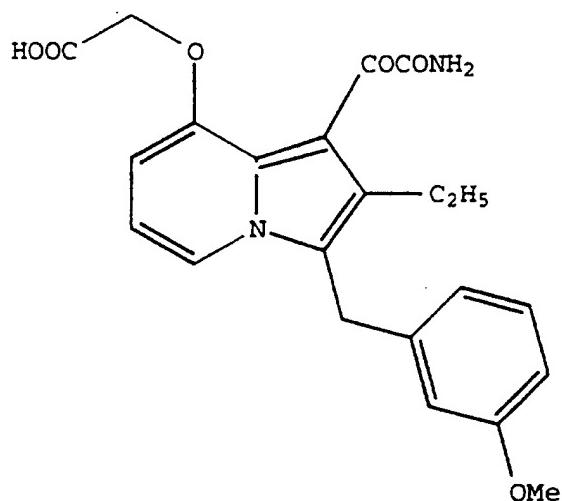
5

(52k)

-217-

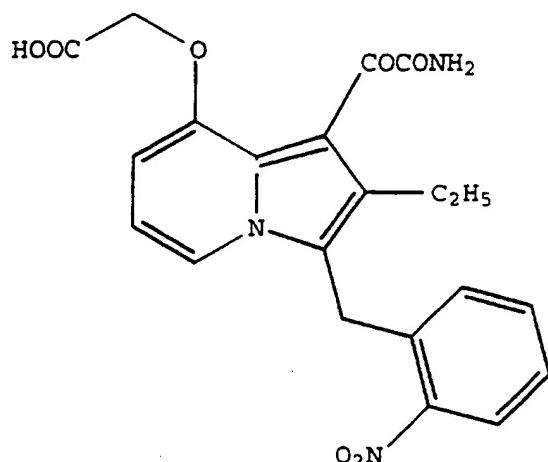


(521)

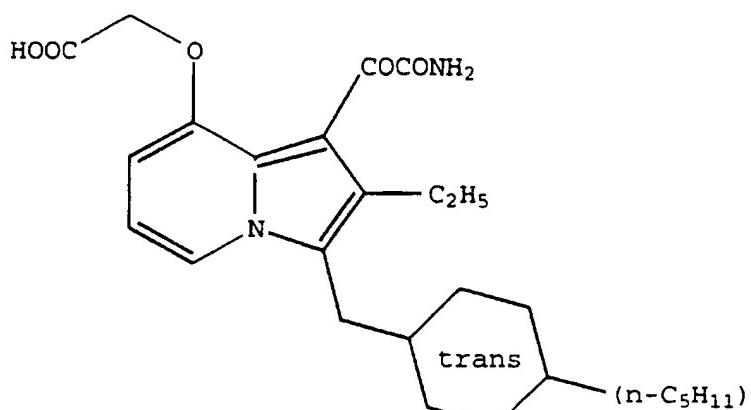


(52m)

-218-

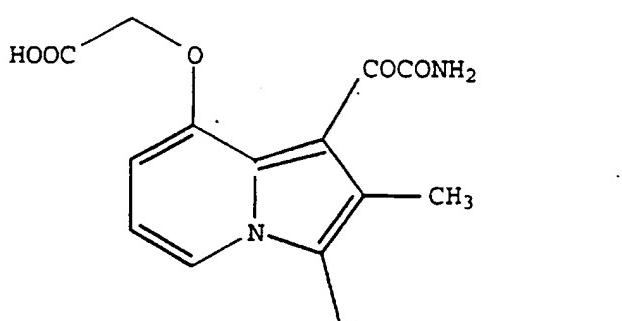


(52n)



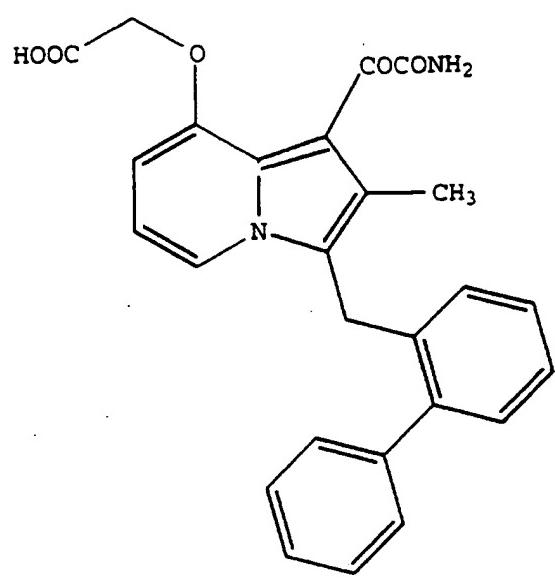
5

(52o)

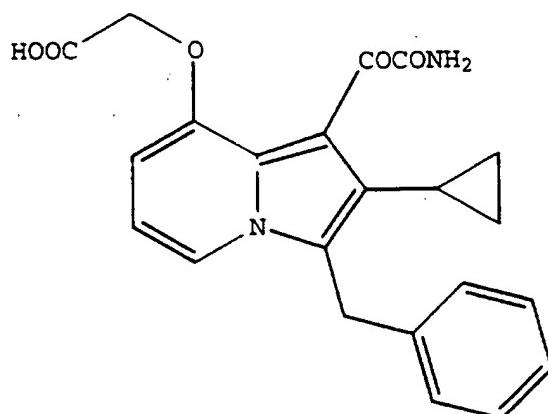


(52p)

-219-

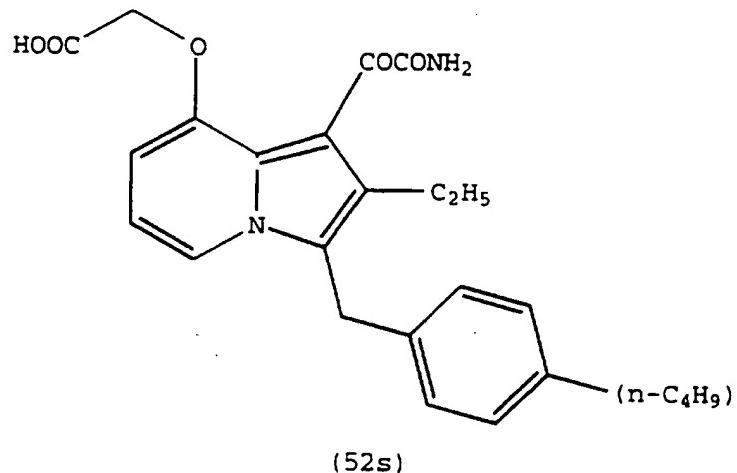


(52q)

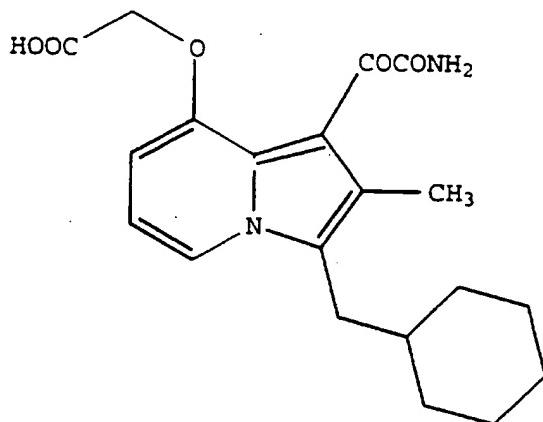


(52r)

-220-

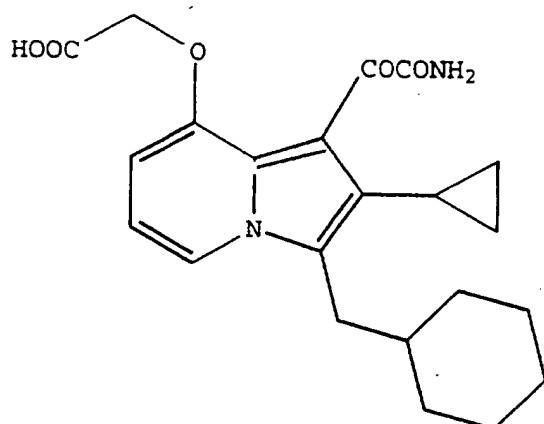


(52s)



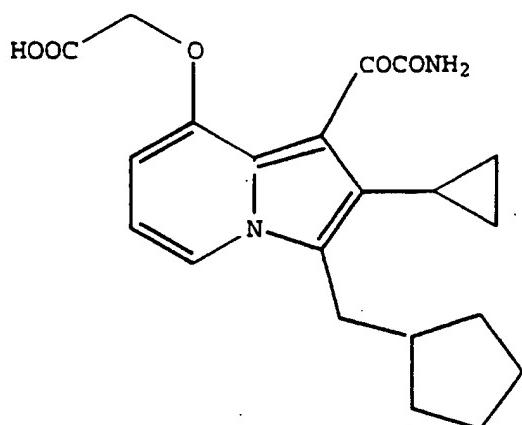
5

(52t)

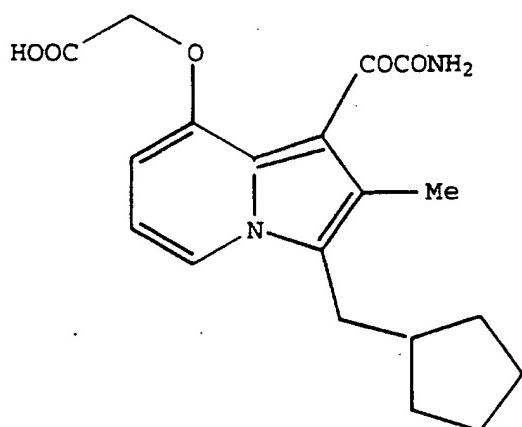


(52u)

-221-

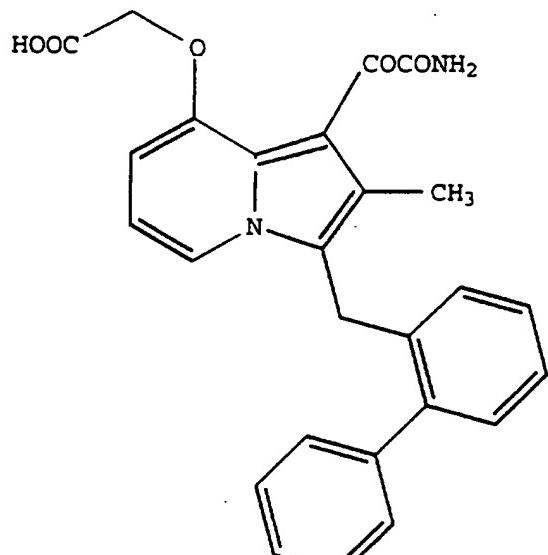


(52v)

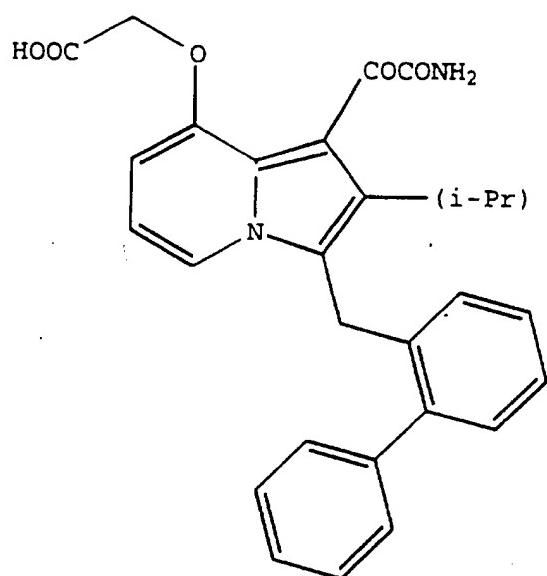


(52w)

-222-

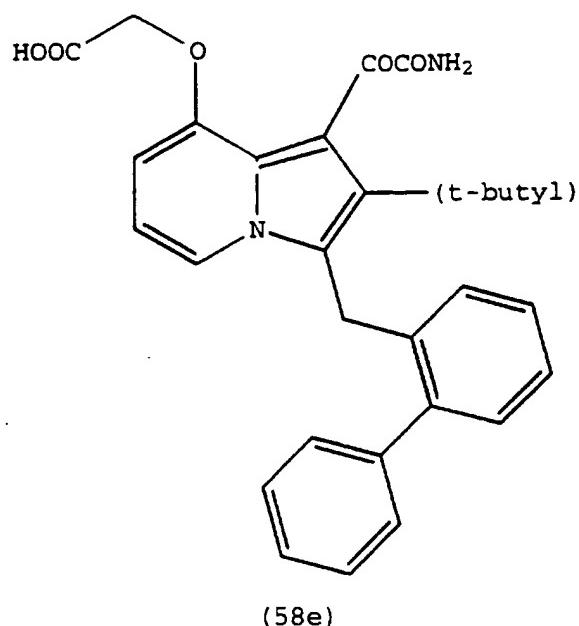


(58a)

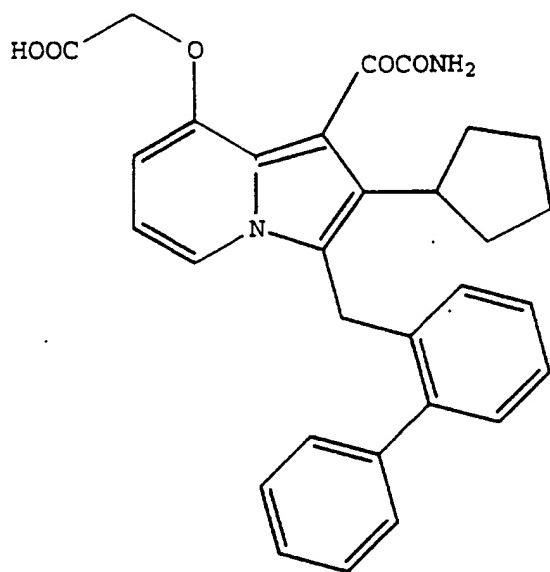


(58c)

-223-

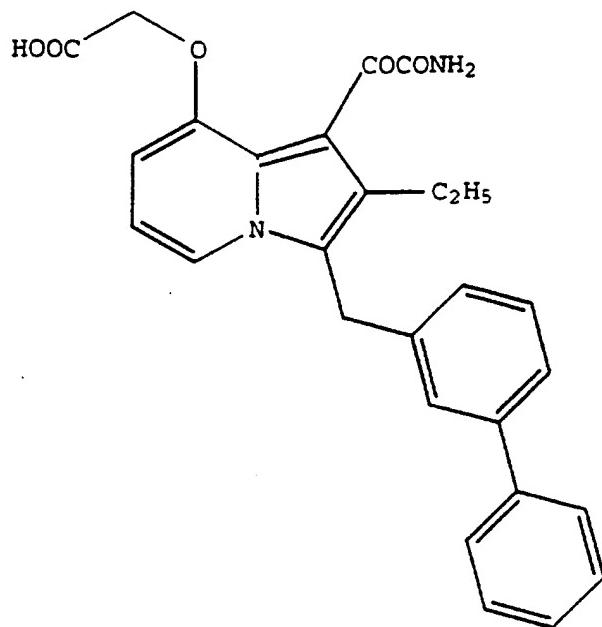


(58e)

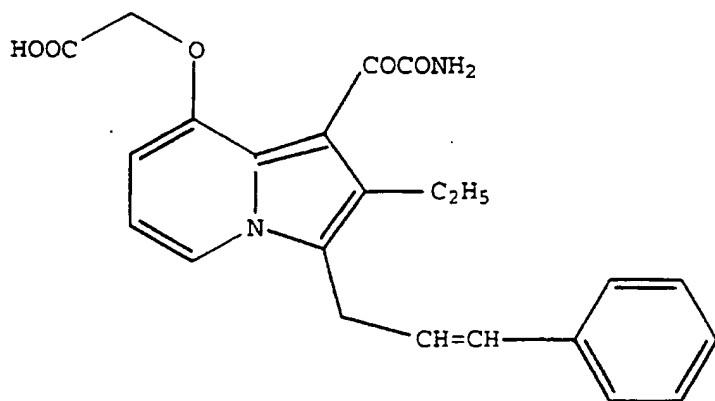


(58f)

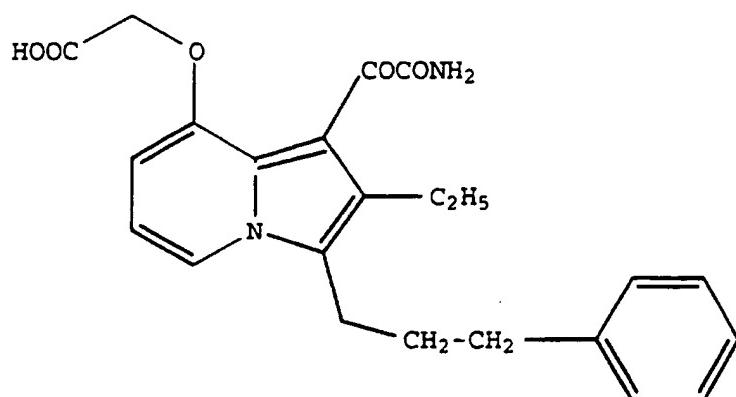
-224-



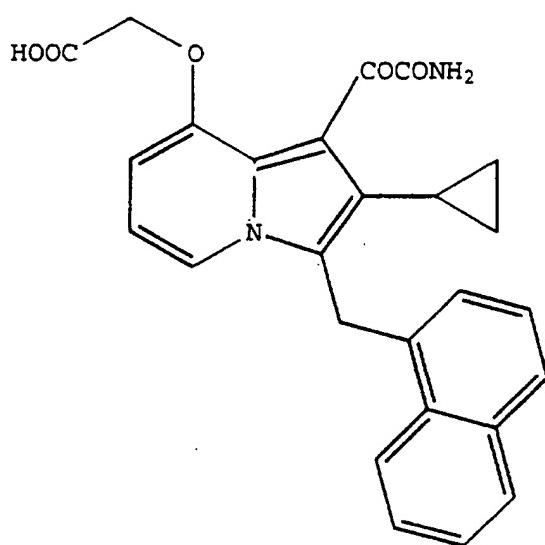
(58g)



-225-

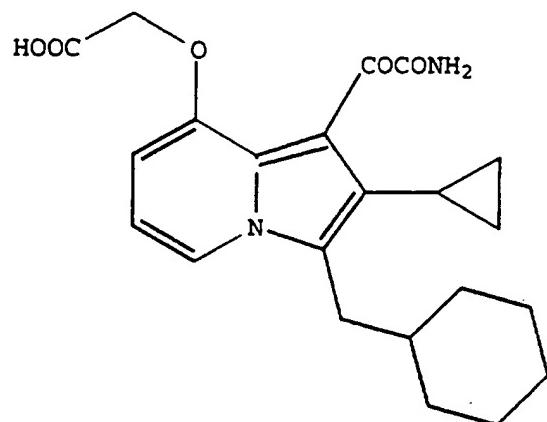


(58i)

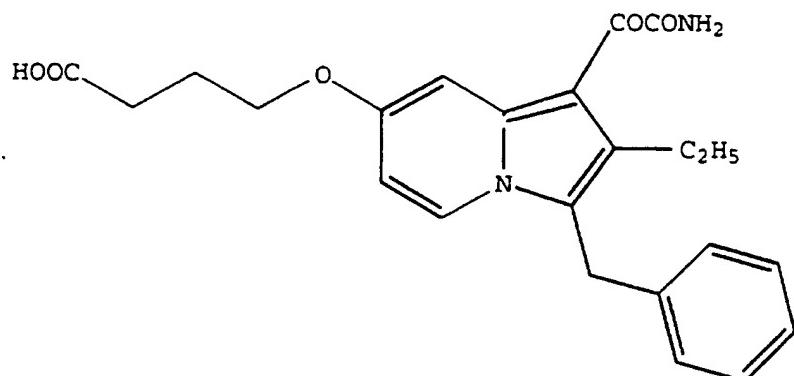


(58j)

-226-

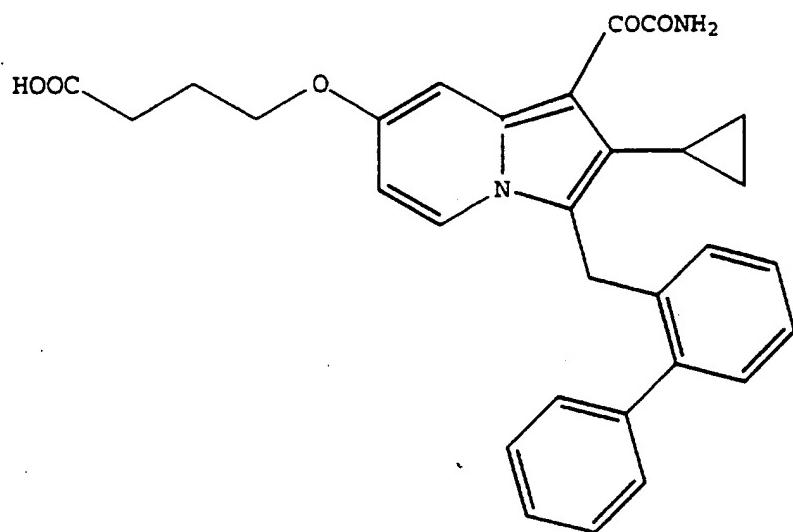


(58k)

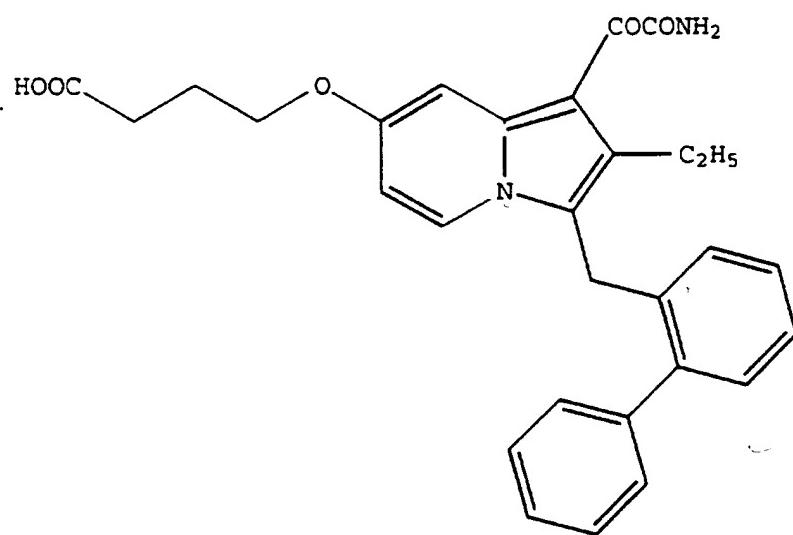


(67a)

-227-

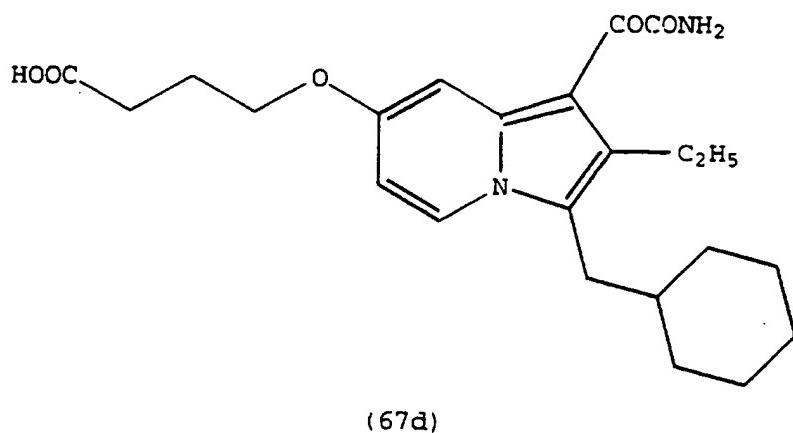


(67b)

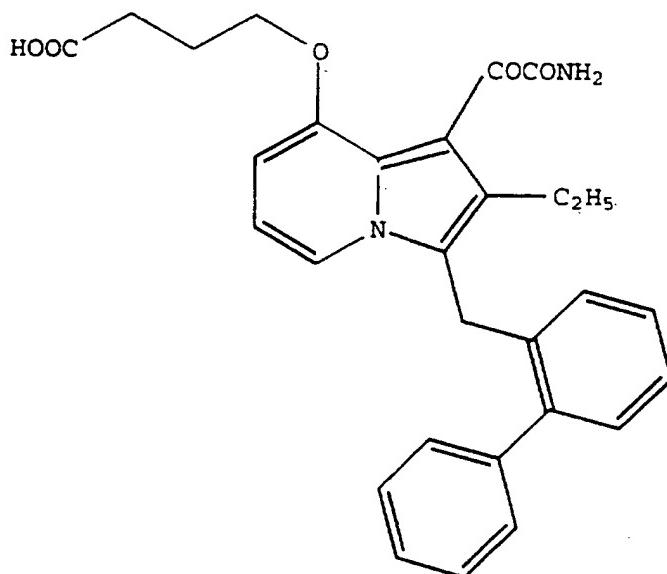


(67c)

-228-

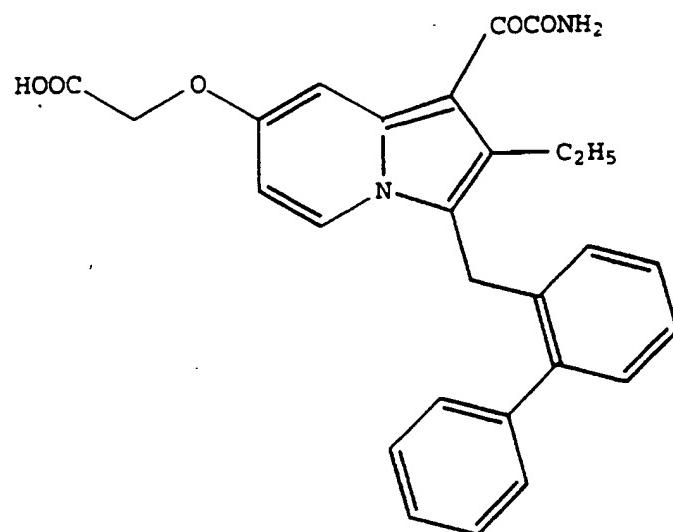


(67d)

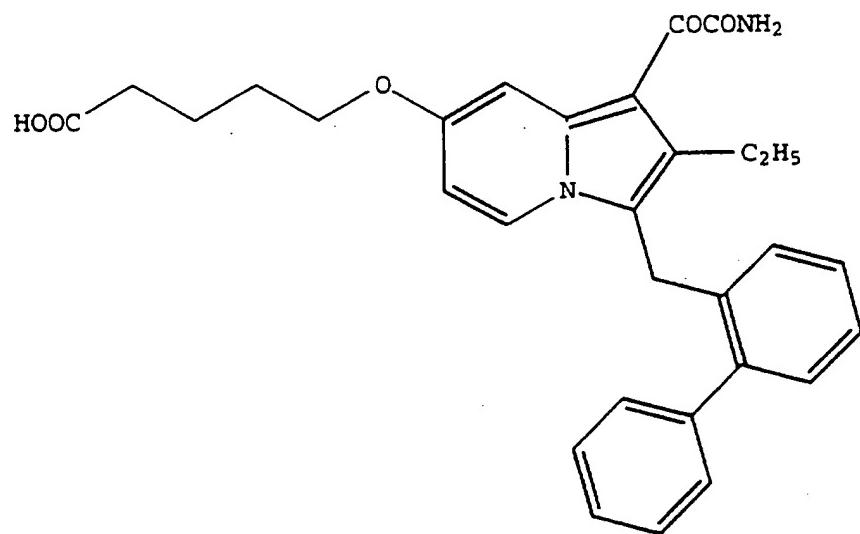


(69a)

-229-

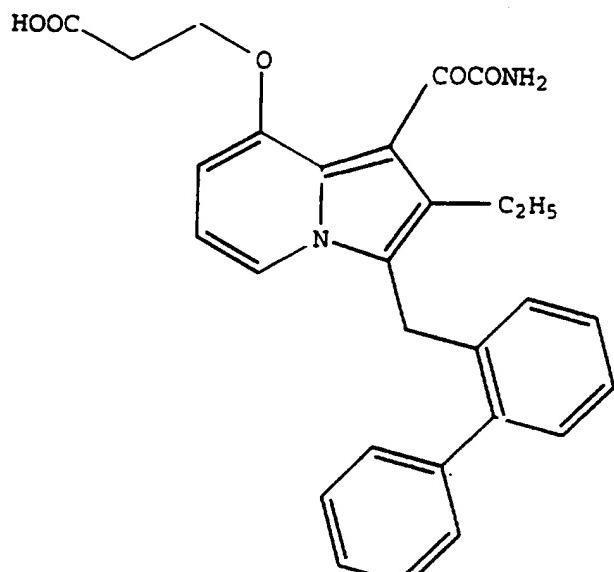


(69b)

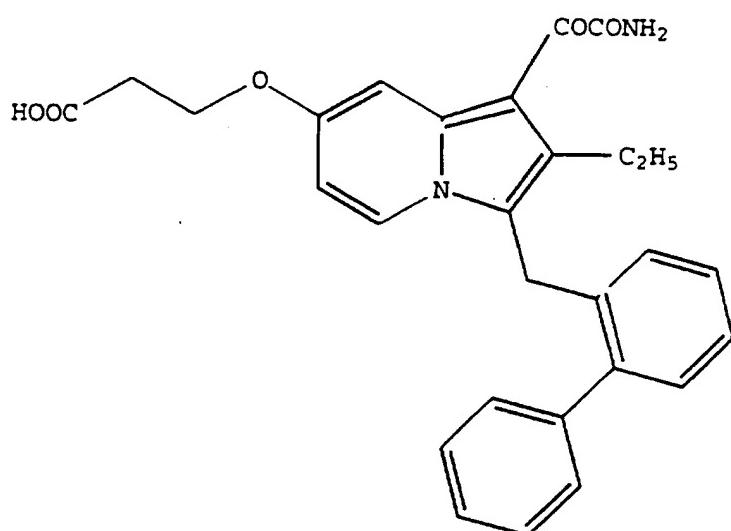


(69c)

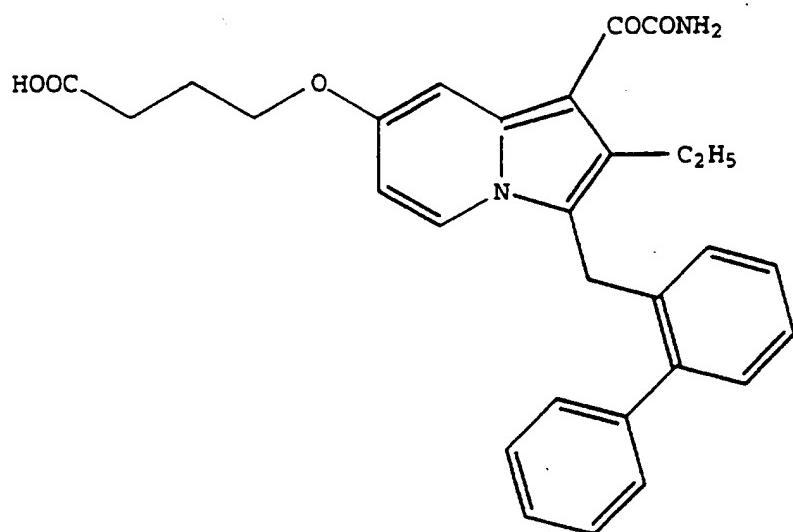
-230-



(70a)

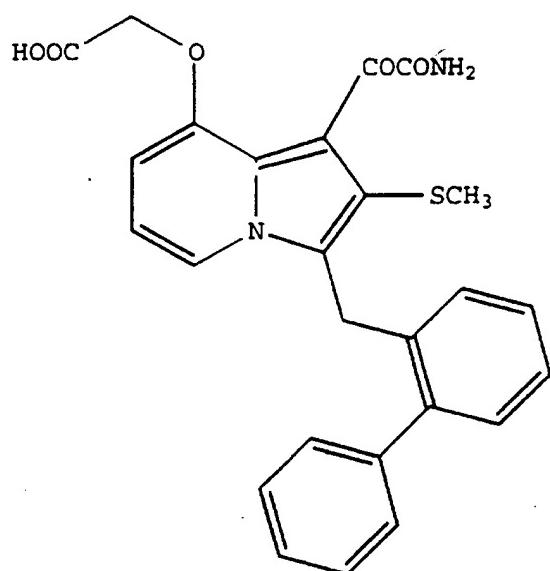


-231-



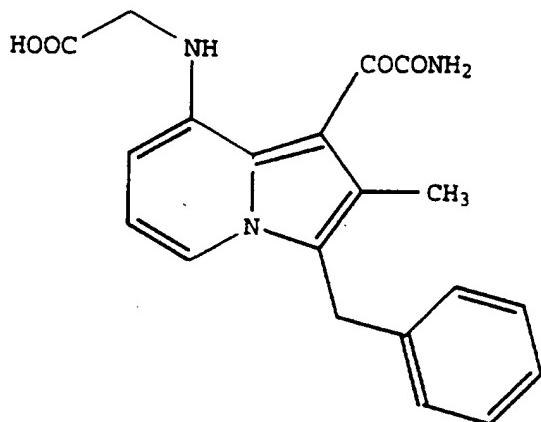
(71b)

5

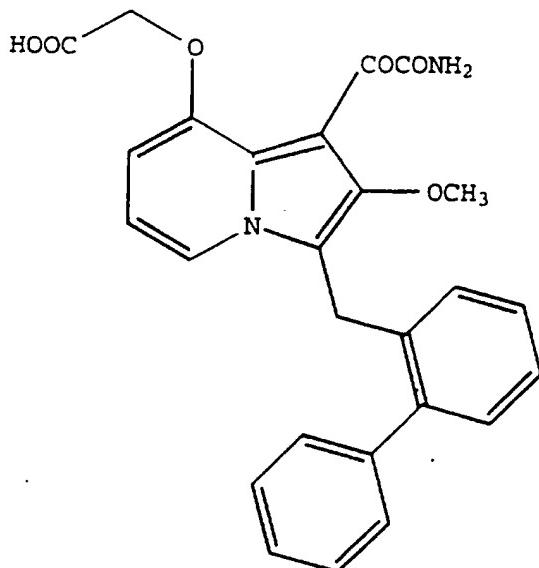


(83)

-232-



(90b)



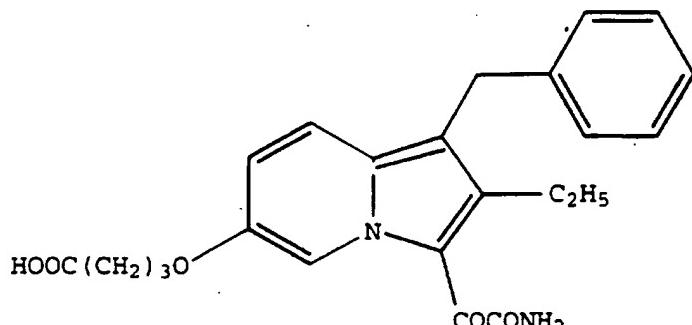
(97)

5

and mixtures of the above compounds.

23. An indolizine-3-acetamide functional compound and a  
 10 pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate or prodrug  
 derivative thereof; wherein said compound is selected from  
 the group represented by the following formulae:

-233-



(11)

- 5        24. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising the  
indolizine-1-acetamide as claimed in Claim 1 together with a  
pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent therefor.
- 10       25. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising the  
indolizine-1-hydrazide as claimed in Claim 4 together with a  
pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent therefor.
- 15       26. A pharmaceutical formulation comprising the  
indolizine-1-glyoxylamide as claimed in Claim 5 together with  
a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent therefor.
- 20       27. A method of treating a mammal to alleviate the  
pathological effects of septic shock, adult respiratory  
distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma,  
allergic rhinitis, and rheumatoid arthritis; wherein the  
method comprises administration to said mammal of at least  
25 one indolizine-1-acetamide as claimed in Claim 1 in an  
amount sufficient to inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of  
fatty acid and to thereby inhibit or prevent the  
arachidonic acid cascade and its deleterious products.

-234-

28. A method of treating a mammal to alleviate the pathological effects of septic shock, adult respiratory distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, 5 allergic rhinitis, and rheumatoid arthritis; wherein the method comprises administration to said mammal of at least one indolizine-1-hydrazide as claimed in Claim 4 in an amount sufficient to inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of fatty acid and to thereby inhibit or prevent the 10 arachidonic acid cascade and its deleterious products.

29. A method of treating a mammal to alleviate the pathological effects of septic shock, adult respiratory 15 distress syndrome, pancreatitis, trauma, bronchial asthma, allergic rhinitis, and rheumatoid arthritis; wherein the method comprises administration to said mammal of at least one indolizine-1-glyoxylamide as claimed in Claim 5 in an amount sufficient to inhibit sPLA<sub>2</sub> mediated release of 20 fatty acid and to thereby inhibit or prevent the arachidonic acid cascade and its deleterious products.

30. A method of treating a mammal, including a human, suffering from or susceptible to a disease in which sPLA<sub>2</sub> 25 mediated release of fatty acids is a cause which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound according to Claim 1.

30

31. A method of treating a mammal, including a human, suffering from or susceptible to a disease in which sPLA<sub>2</sub> 35 mediated release of fatty acids is a cause which comprises administering an effective amount of a compound according to Claim 4.

-235-

32. A method of treating a mammal, including a human,  
suffering from or susceptible to a disease in which sPLA<sub>2</sub>  
mediated release of fatty acids is a cause which comprises  
5 administering an effective amount of a compound according  
to Claim 5.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US95/09381

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) :C07D 221/04; C07F 9/30, 9/38, 9/40, 9/48; A61K 31/435, 31/675  
US CL :546/21, 112; 514/80, 299

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 546/21, 112; 514/80, 299

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

CAS ONLINE

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	Chemical Abstracts, Volume 110, issued 13 March 1989, Cingolani et al, "Indolizine Derivatives with Biological Activity. V. 1-(2-Aminoethyl)-2-methylindolizine and Its N-alkyl Derivatives", abstract no. 94921, Eur. J. Med. Chem. 23(3), pages 291-294, see entire abstract and the compounds with registry numbers 118972-17-1, 118972-18-2, 118972-19-3, 118972-20-6, and 118972-21-7.	1-27

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.	<input type="checkbox"/>	See patent family annex.
*A*	Special categories of cited documents:	"T"	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*E*	document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*L*	earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y"	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*O*	document which may throw doubt on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"&"	document member of the same patent family
*P*	document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
	document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
04 OCTOBER 1995	31 OCT 1995
Name and mailing address of the ISA/US Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks Box PCT Washington, D.C. 20231	Authorized officer KING L. WONG
Faxsimile No. (703) 305-3230	Telephone No. (703) 305-1235

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US95/09381

## C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	Chemical Abstracts, Volume 114, issued 15 April 1991, Cingolani et al, "Indolizine Derivatives with Biological Activity. VI. 1-(2-Aminoethyl)-3-benzyl-7-methoxy-2-methylindolizine, Benanserine Structural Analog", abstract no. 143047, Eur. J. Med. Chem. 25(8), pages 709-712, see entire abstract and the compounds with registry numbers 132868-08-7 and 132868-09-8.	1-27
A	US, A, 3,717,644 (WALTER) 20 February 1973, see columns 1 and 2.	1-27
A	GB, A, 1,174,124 (BEECHAM GROUP LIMITED) 10 December 1969.	1-27